

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

MODEL BUSINESS
CORPORATION ACT
3rd Edition

OFFICIAL TEXT
Revised through 2002

Adopted by the Committee on Corporate Laws of the Section of Business Law
with support of the American Bar Foundation

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Chapter 1	General Provisions
Chapter 2	Incorporation
Chapter 3	Purposes and Powers
Chapter 4	Name
Chapter 5	Office and Agent
Chapter 6	Shares and Distributions
Chapter 7	Shareholders
Chapter 8	Directors and Officers
Chapter 9	Domestication and Conversion
Chapter 10	Amendment of Articles of Incorporation and Bylaws
Chapter 11	Mergers and Share Exchanges
Chapter 12	Disposition of Assets
Chapter 13	Appraisal Rights
Chapter 14	Dissolution
Chapter 15	Foreign Corporations
Chapter 16	Records and Reports
Chapter 17	Transition Provisions

The official text of the Act with official comment and statutory cross-references is available from the ABA in the [Model Business Corporation Act](#).

The official text of the Act with official comment, statutory cross-references, and extensive annotation is available from the ABA in the [Model Business Corporation Act Annotated](#).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

Subchapter A. SHORT TITLE AND RESERVATION OF POWER

- § 1.01. Short title
- § 1.02. Reservation of power to amend or repeal

Subchapter B. FILING DOCUMENTS

- § 1.20. Requirements for documents; extrinsic facts
- § 1.21. Forms
- § 1.22. Filing, service, and copying fees
- § 1.23. Effective time and date of document
- § 1.24. Correcting filed document
- § 1.25. Filing duty of secretary of state
- § 1.26. Appeal from secretary of state's refusal to file document
- § 1.27. Evidentiary effect of copy of filed document
- § 1.28. Certificate of existence
- § 1.29. Penalty for signing false document

Subchapter C. SECRETARY OF STATE

- § 1.30. Powers

Subchapter D. DEFINITIONS

- § 1.40. Act definitions
- § 1.41. Notice
- § 1.42. Number of shareholders

Subchapter A. SHORT TITLE AND RESERVATION OF POWER

§ 1.01. SHORT TITLE

This Act shall be known and may be cited as the “[name of state] Business Corporation Act.”

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Application of Act to existing domestic corporation, see § 17.01.
- Application of Act to qualified existing foreign corporation, see § 17.02.
- Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.
- Effective date of Act, see § 17.06.
- Professional corporations, see Model Professional Corporation Supplement.
- Saving provisions, see § 17.03.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 1.02. RESERVATION OF POWER TO AMEND OR REPEAL

The [name of state legislature] has power to amend or repeal all or part of this Act at any time and all domestic and foreign corporations subject to this Act are governed by the amendment or repeal.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Application of Act to existing domestic corporation, see § 17.01.

Application of Act to existing qualified foreign corporation, see § 17.02.

Effective date of Act, see § 17.06.

Saving provisions, see § 17.03.

Subchapter B.

FILING DOCUMENTS

§ 1.20. REQUIREMENTS FOR DOCUMENTS; EXTRINSIC FACTS

(a) A document must satisfy the requirements of this section, and of any other section that adds to or varies these requirements, to be entitled to filing by the secretary of state.

(b) This Act must require or permit filing the document in the office of the secretary of state.

(c) The document must contain the information required by this Act. It may contain other information as well.

(d) The document must be typewritten or printed or, if electronically transmitted, it must be in a format that can be retrieved or reproduced in typewritten or printed form.

(e) The document must be in the English language. A corporate name need not be in English if written in English letters or Arabic or Roman numerals, and the certificate of existence required of foreign corporations need not be in English if accompanied by a reasonably authenticated English translation.

(f) The document must be executed:

(1) by the chairman of the board of directors of a domestic or foreign corporation, by its president, or by another of its officers;

(2) if directors have not been selected or the corporation has not been formed, by an incorporator; or

(3) if the corporation is in the hands of a receiver, trustee, or other court-appointed fiduciary, by that fiduciary.

(g) The person executing the document shall sign it and state beneath or opposite his signature his name and the capacity in which he signs. The document may but need not contain a corporate seal, attestation, acknowledgment or verification.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(h) If the secretary of state has prescribed a mandatory form for the document under section 1.21, the document must be in or on the prescribed form.

(i) The document must be delivered to the office of the secretary of state for filing. Delivery may be made by electronic transmission if and to the extent permitted by the secretary of state. If it is filed in typewritten or printed form and not transmitted electronically, the secretary of state may require one exact or conformed copy to be delivered with the document (except as provided in sections 5.03 and 15.09).

(j) When the document is delivered to the office of the secretary of state for filing, the correct filing fee, and any franchise tax, license fee, or penalty required to be paid therewith by this Act or other law must be paid or provision for payment made in a manner permitted by the secretary of state.

(k) Whenever a provision of this Act permits any of the terms of a plan or a filed document to be dependent on facts objectively ascertainable outside the plan or filed document, the following provisions apply:

(1) The manner in which the facts will operate upon the terms of the plan or filed document shall be set forth in the plan or filed document.

(2) The facts may include, but are not limited to:

(i) any of the following that is available in a nationally recognized news or information medium either in print or electronically: statistical or market indices, market prices of any security or group of securities, interest rates, currency exchange rates, or similar economic or financial data;

(ii) a determination or action by any person or body, including the corporation or any other party to a plan or filed document; or

(iii) the terms of, or actions taken under, an agreement to which the corporation is a party, or any other agreement or document.

(3) As used in this subsection:

(i) "filed document" means a document filed with the secretary of state under any provision of this Act except chapter 15 or section 16.21; and

(ii) "plan" means a plan of domestication, nonprofit conversion, entity conversion, merger or share exchange.

(4) The following provisions of a plan or filed document may not be made dependent on facts outside the plan or filed document:

(i) The name and address of any person required in a filed document.

(ii) The registered office of any entity required in a filed document.

(iii) The registered agent of any entity required in a filed document.

(iv) The number of authorized shares and designation of each class or series of shares.

(v) The effective date of a filed document.

(vi) Any required statement in a filed document of the date on which the underlying transaction was approved or the manner in which that approval was given.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(5) If a provision of a filed document is made dependent on a fact ascertainable outside of the filed document, and that fact is not ascertainable by reference to a source described in subsection (k)(2)(i) or a document that is a matter of public record, or the affected shareholders have not received notice of the fact from the corporation, then the corporation shall file with the secretary of state articles of amendment setting forth the fact promptly after the time when the fact referred to is first ascertainable or thereafter changes. Articles of amendment under this subsection (k)(5) are deemed to be authorized by the authorization of the original filed document or plan to which they relate and may be filed by the corporation without further action by the board of directors or the shareholders.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificate of existence for foreign corporation, see § 15.03.

Corporate name, see ch. 4, Section 15.06.

Correcting filed document, see § 1.24.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

“Electronic transmission,” see § 1.40.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Forms, see § 1.21.

Penalty for filing false document, see § 1.29.

Secretary of corporation, see § 1.40.

Secretary of state’s filing duty, see § 1.25.

“Sign,” see § 1.40.

Terms of classes or series of shares, see § 6.02(d).

Terms of merger, see § 11.02(d).

Terms of share exchange, see § 11.03(d).

§ 1.21. FORMS

(a) The secretary of state may prescribe and furnish on request forms for: (1) an application for a certificate of existence, (2) a foreign corporation’s application for a certificate of authority to transact business in this state, (3) a foreign corporation’s application for a certificate of withdrawal, and (4) the annual report. If the secretary of state so requires, use of these forms is mandatory.

(b) The secretary of state may prescribe and furnish on request forms for other documents required or permitted to be filed by this Act but their use is not mandatory.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Application for certificate of authority, see § 15.03.

Application for certificate of withdrawal, see § 15.20.

Certificate of existence, see § 1.28.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 1.22. FILING, SERVICE, AND COPYING FEES

(a) The secretary of state shall collect the following fees when the documents described in this subsection are delivered to him for filing:

Document	Fee
(1) Articles of incorporation	\$ _____.
(2) Application for use of indistinguishable name	\$ _____.
(3) Application for reserved name	\$ _____.
(4) Notice of transfer of reserved name	\$ _____.
(5) Application for registered name	\$ _____.
(6) Application for renewal of registered name	\$ _____.
(7) Corporation's statement of change of registered agent or registered office or both	\$ _____.
(8) Agent's statement of change of registered office for each affected corporation not to exceed a total of _____.	\$ _____.
(9) Agent's statement of resignation	No fee.
(9A) Articles of domestication	\$ _____.
(9B) Articles of charter surrender	\$ _____.
(9C) Articles of nonprofit conversion	\$ _____.
(9D) Articles of domestication and conversion	\$ _____.
(9E) Articles of entity conversion	\$ _____.
(10) Amendment of articles of incorporation	\$ _____.
(11) Restatement of articles of incorporation with amendment of articles	\$ _____.
(12) Articles of merger or share exchange	\$ _____.
(13) Articles of dissolution	\$ _____.
(14) Articles of revocation of dissolution	\$ _____.
(15) Certificate of administrative dissolution	No fee.
(16) Application for reinstatement following administrative dissolution	\$ _____.
(17) Certificate of reinstatement	No fee.
(18) Certificate of judicial dissolution	No fee.
(19) Application for certificate of authority	\$ _____.
(20) Application for amended certificate of authority	\$ _____.
(21) Application for certificate of withdrawal	\$ _____.
(21A) Application for transfer of authority	\$ _____.
(22) Certificate of revocation of authority to transact business	No fee.
(23) Annual report	\$ _____.
(24) Articles of correction	\$ _____.
(25) Application for certificate of existence or authorization	\$ _____.
(26) Any other document required or permitted to be filed by this Act	\$ _____.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The secretary of state shall collect a fee of \$ _____ each time process is served on him under this Act. The party to a proceeding causing service of process is entitled to recover this fee as costs if he prevails in the proceeding.

(c) The secretary of state shall collect the following fees for copying and certifying the copy of any filed document relating to a domestic or foreign corporation:

- (1) \$ _____ a page for copying; and
- (2) \$ _____ for the certificate.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Agent's change of registered office, see § 5.02.

Agent's resignation, see § 5.03.

Amended certificate of authority, see § 15.04.

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see §§ 6.03, 6.31, 10.06, 10.08.

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Certificate of authority, see § 15.03.

Certificate of withdrawal, see § 15.20.

Corporation's change of registered agent or office, see § 5.02.

Correction, see § 1.24.

Dissolution:

 administrative, see § 14.21.

 judicial, see § 14.31.

 reinstatement, see § 14.22.

 revocation, see § 14.04.

 voluntary, see §§ 14.01 & 14.03.

Evidentiary effect of certified copy, see § 1.27.

Existence, see § 1.28.

Incorporation, see § 2.01.

Merger, see § 11.05.

Name of corporation, see § 4.01.

Registered name, see § 4.03.

Renewal of registered name, see § 4.03.

Reserved name, see § 4.02.

Restatement of articles of incorporation, see § 10.07.

Revocation of certificate of authority, see § 15.31.

Service on secretary of state, see §§ 11.07, 15.20, 15.31.

Share exchange, see § 11.06.

Transfer of registered name, see § 4.03.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 1.23. EFFECTIVE TIME AND DATE OF DOCUMENT

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b) and section 1.24(c), a document accepted for filing is effective:

- (1) at the date and time of filing, as evidenced by such means as the secretary of state may use for the purpose of recording the date and time of filing; or
- (2) at the time specified in the document as its effective time on the date it is filed.

(b) A document may specify a delayed effective time and date, and if it does so the document becomes effective at the time and date specified. If a delayed effective date but no time is specified, the document is effective at the close of business on that date. A delayed effective date for a document may not be later than the 90th day after the date it is filed.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Effective date:

- amendment or restatement of articles of incorporation, see § 10.09.
- merger or share exchange, see § 11.06.
- voluntary dissolution, see § 14.03.

Filing duty of secretary of state, see § 1.25.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

§ 1.24. CORRECTING FILED DOCUMENT

(a) A domestic or foreign corporation may correct a document filed by the secretary of state if (1) the document contains an inaccuracy, or (2) the document was defectively executed, attested, sealed, verified or acknowledged, or (3) the electronic transmission was defective.

(b) A document is corrected:

- (1) by preparing articles of correction that
 - (i) describe the document (including its filing date) or attach a copy of it to the articles,
 - (ii) specify the inaccuracy or defect to be corrected, and
 - (iii) correct the inaccuracy or defect; and
- (2) by delivering the articles to the secretary of state for filing.

(c) Articles of correction are effective on the effective date of the document they correct except as to persons relying on the uncorrected document and adversely affected by the correction. As to those persons, articles of correction are effective when filed.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

“Electronic transmission,” see § 1.40.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

§ 1.25. FILING DUTY OF SECRETARY OF STATE

(a) If a document delivered to the office of the secretary of state for filing satisfies the requirements of section 1.20, the secretary of state shall file it.

(b) The secretary of state files a document by recording it as filed on the date and time of receipt. After filing a document, except as provided in sections 5.03 and 15.10, the secretary of state shall deliver to the domestic or foreign corporation or its representative a copy of the document with an acknowledgement of the date and time of filing.

(c) If the secretary of state refuses to file a document, he shall return it to the domestic or foreign corporation or its representative within five days after the document was delivered, together with a brief, written explanation of the reason for his refusal.

(d) The secretary of state’s duty to file documents under this section is ministerial. His filing or refusing to file a document does not:

(1) affect the validity or invalidity of the document in whole or part;

(2) relate to the correctness or incorrectness of information contained in the document;

(3) create a presumption that the document is valid or invalid or that information contained in the document is correct or incorrect.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appeal from rejection of document, see § 1.26.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing requirements:

fees, see § 1.22.

generally, see § 1.20.

resignation of registered agent, see §§ 5.03 & 15.09.

service on foreign corporation, see § 15.10.

Powers of secretary of state, see § 1.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 1.26. APPEAL FROM SECRETARY OF STATE'S REFUSAL TO FILE DOCUMENT

(a) If the secretary of state refuses to file a document delivered to his office for filing, the domestic or foreign corporation may appeal the refusal within 30 days after the return of the document to the [name or describe] court [of the county where the corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is or will be located] [of _____ county]. The appeal is commenced by petitioning the court to compel filing the document and by attaching to the petition the document and the secretary of state's explanation of his refusal to file.

(b) The court may summarily order the secretary of state to file the document or take other action the court considers appropriate.

(c) The court's final decision may be appealed as in other civil proceedings.

CROSS-REFERENCES

"Deliver," see § 1.40.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

"Principal office":

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

requirement, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

Secretary of state's filing duty, see § 1.25.

§ 1.27. EVIDENTIARY EFFECT OF COPY OF FILED DOCUMENT

A certificate from the secretary of state delivered with a copy of a document filed by the secretary of state, is conclusive evidence that the original document is on file with the secretary of state.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certifying fee, see § 1.22.

Forms, see § 1.21.

Secretary of state's filing duty, see § 1.25.

§ 1.28. CERTIFICATE OF EXISTENCE

(a) Anyone may apply to the secretary of state to furnish a certificate of existence for a domestic corporation or a certificate of authorization for a foreign corporation.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) A certificate of existence or authorization sets forth:

(1) the domestic corporation's corporate name or the foreign corporation's corporate name used in this state;

(2) that

(i) the domestic corporation is duly incorporated under the law of this state, the date of its incorporation, and the period of its duration if less than perpetual; or

(ii) that the foreign corporation is authorized to transact business in this state;

(3) that all fees, taxes, and penalties owed to this state have been paid, if

(i) payment is reflected in the records of the secretary of state and

(ii) nonpayment affects the existence or authorization of the domestic or foreign corporation;

(4) that its most recent annual report required by section 16.21 has been delivered to the secretary of state;

(5) that articles of dissolution have not been filed; and

(6) other facts of record in the office of the secretary of state that may be requested by the applicant.

(c) Subject to any qualification stated in the certificate, a certificate of existence or authorization issued by the secretary of state may be relied upon as conclusive evidence that the domestic or foreign corporation is in existence or is authorized to transact business in this state.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificate of existence for nonqualified foreign corporation, see § 15.03.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Forms, see § 1.21.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

requirement, see §§ 2.02, 5.01, 15.07.

§ 1.29. PENALTY FOR SIGNING FALSE DOCUMENT

(a) A person commits an offense if he signs a document he knows is false in any material respect with intent that the document be delivered to the secretary of state for filing.

(b) An offense under this section is a [_____] misdemeanor [punishable by a fine of not to exceed \$ _____].

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Judicial dissolution, see § 14.30.

Revocation of certificate of authority of foreign corporation, see § 15.30.

“Sign,” see § 1.40.

Subchapter C.

SECRETARY OF STATE

§ 1.30. POWERS

The secretary of state has the power reasonably necessary to perform the duties required of him by this Act.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Administrative dissolution, see § 14.20.

Judicial dissolution, see § 14.30.

Revocation of certificate of authority of foreign corporation, see § 15.30.

Secretary of state’s filing duty, see § 1.25.

Subchapter D.

DEFINITIONS

§ 1.40. ACT DEFINITIONS

In this Act:

(1) “Articles of incorporation” means the original articles of incorporation, all amendments thereof, and any other documents permitted or required to be filed by a domestic business corporation with the secretary of state under any provision of this Act except section 16.21. If an amendment of the articles or any other document filed under this Act restates the articles in their entirety, thenceforth the “articles” shall not include any prior documents.

(2) “Authorized shares” means the shares of all classes a domestic or foreign corporation is authorized to issue.

(3) “Conspicuous” means so written that a reasonable person against whom the writing is to operate should have noticed it. For example, printing in italics or boldface or contrasting color, or typing in capitals or underlined, is conspicuous.

(4) “Corporation,” “domestic corporation” or “domestic business corporation” means a corporation for profit, which is not a foreign corporation, incorporated under or subject to the provisions of this Act.

(5) “Deliver” or “delivery” means any method of delivery used in conventional commercial practice, including delivery by hand, mail, commercial delivery, and electronic transmission.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(6) “Distribution” means a direct or indirect transfer of money or other property (except its own shares) or incurrence of indebtedness by a corporation to or for the benefit of its shareholders in respect of any of its shares. A distribution may be in the form of a declaration or payment of a dividend; a purchase, redemption, or other acquisition of shares; a distribution of indebtedness; or otherwise.

(6A) “Domestic unincorporated entity” means an unincorporated entity whose internal affairs are governed by the laws of this state.

(7) “Effective date of notice” is defined in section 1.41.

(7A) “Electronic transmission” or “electronically transmitted” means any process of communication not directly involving the physical transfer of paper that is suitable for the retention, retrieval, and reproduction of information by the recipient.

(7B) “Eligible entity” means a domestic or foreign unincorporated entity or a domestic or foreign nonprofit corporation.

(7C) “Eligible interests” means interests or memberships.

(8) “Employee” includes an officer but not a director. A director may accept duties that make him also an employee.

(9) “Entity” includes domestic and foreign business corporation; domestic and foreign nonprofit corporation; estate; trust; domestic and foreign unincorporated entity; and state, United States, and foreign government.

(9A) The phrase “facts objectively ascertainable” outside of a filed document or plan is defined in section 1.20(k).

(9B) “Filing entity” means an unincorporated entity that is of a type that is created by filing a public organic document.

(10) “Foreign corporation” means a corporation incorporated under a law other than the law of this state; which would be a business corporation if incorporated under the laws of this state.

(10A) “Foreign nonprofit corporation” means a corporation incorporated under a law other than the law of this state, which would be a nonprofit corporation if incorporated under the laws of this state.

(10B) “Foreign unincorporated entity” means an unincorporated entity whose internal affairs are governed by an organic law of a jurisdiction other than this state.

(11) “Governmental subdivision” includes authority, county, district, and municipality.

(12) “Includes” denotes a partial definition.

(13) “Individual” means a natural person.

(13A) “Interest” means either or both of the following rights under the organic law of an unincorporated entity:

(i) the right to receive distributions from the entity either in the ordinary course or upon liquidation; or

(ii) the right to receive notice or vote on issues involving its internal affairs, other than as an agent, assignee, proxy or person responsible for managing its business and affairs.

(13B) “Interest holder” means a person who holds of record an interest.

(14) “Means” denotes an exhaustive definition.

(14A) “Membership” means the rights of a member in a domestic or foreign nonprofit corporation.

(14B) “Nonfiling entity” means an unincorporated entity that is of a type that is not created by filing a public organic document.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(14C) “Nonprofit corporation” or “domestic nonprofit corporation” means a corporation incorporated under the laws of this state and subject to the provisions of the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act.

(15) “Notice” is defined in section 1.41.

(15A) “Organic document” means a public organic document or a private organic document.

(15B) “Organic law “ means the statute governing the internal affairs of a domestic or foreign business or nonprofit corporation or unincorporated entity.

(15C) “Owner liability” means personal liability for a debt, obligation or liability of a domestic or foreign business or nonprofit corporation or unincorporated entity that is imposed on a person:

(i) solely by reason of the person’s status as a shareholder, member or interest holder;

or

(ii) by the articles of incorporation, bylaws or an organic document under a provision of the organic law of an entity authorizing the articles of incorporation, bylaws or an organic document to make one or more specified shareholders, members or interest holders liable in their capacity as shareholders, members or interest holders for all or specified debts, obligations or liabilities of the entity.

(16) “Person” includes an individual and an entity.

(17) “Principal office” means the office (in or out of this state) so designated in the annual report where the principal executive offices of a domestic or foreign corporation are located.

(17A) “Private organic document” means any document (other than the public organic document, if any) that determines the internal governance of an unincorporated entity. Where a private organic document has been amended or restated, the term means the private organic document as last amended or restated.

(17B) “Public organic document” means the document, if any, that is filed of public record to create an unincorporated entity. Where a public organic document has been amended or restated, the term means the public organic document as last amended or restated.

(18) “Proceeding” includes civil suit and criminal, administrative, and investigatory action.

(19) “Record date” means the date established under chapter 6 or 7 on which a corporation determines the identity of its shareholders and their shareholdings for purposes of this Act. The determinations shall be made as of the close of business on the record date unless another time for doing so is specified when the record date is fixed.

(20) “Secretary” means the corporate officer to whom the board of directors has delegated responsibility under section 8.40(c) for custody of the minutes of the meetings of the board of directors and of the shareholders and for authenticating records of the corporation.

(21) “Shareholder” means the person in whose name shares are registered in the records of a corporation or the beneficial owner of shares to the extent of the rights granted by a nominee certificate on file with a corporation.

(22) “Shares” means the units into which the proprietary interests in a corporation are divided.

(22A) “Sign” or “signature” includes any manual, facsimile, conformed or electronic signature.

(23) “State,” when referring to a part of the United States, includes a state and commonwealth (and their agencies and governmental subdivisions) and a territory and insular possession (and their agencies and governmental subdivisions) of the United States.

(24) “Subscriber” means a person who subscribes for shares in a corporation, whether before or after incorporation.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(24A) “Unincorporated entity” means an organization or artificial legal person that either has a separate legal existence or has the power to acquire an estate in real property in its own name and that is not any of the following: a domestic or foreign business or nonprofit corporation, an estate, a trust, a state, the United States, or a foreign government. The term includes a general partnership, limited liability company, limited partnership, business trust, joint stock association and incorporated nonprofit association.

(25) “United States” includes district, authority, bureau, commission, department, and any other agency of the United States.

(26) “Voting group” means all shares of one or more classes or series that under the articles of incorporation or this Act are entitled to vote and be counted together collectively on a matter at a meeting of shareholders. All shares entitled by the articles of incorporation or this Act to vote generally on the matter are for that purpose a single voting group.

(27) “Voting power” means the current power to vote in the election of directors.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Nominee certificate, see § 7.23.

Special definitions:

“affiliate,” see § 13.01.

“beneficial shareholder,” see § 13.01.

“conflicting interest or director’s conflicting interest,” see § 8.60.

“corporation,” see §§ 8.50 & 13.01.

“derivative proceeding,” see § 7.40.

“disinterested director,” see § 8.50.

“expenses,” see § 8.50.

“fair value,” see § 13.01.

“interest,” see § 13.01.

“interests,” see § 11.01.

“liability,” see § 8.50.

“merger,” see § 11.01.

“officer,” see § 8.50.

“official capacity,” see § 8.50.

“organizational documents,” see § 11.01.

“other entity,” see § 11.01.

“outstanding shares,” see § 6.03.

“party,” see § 8.50.

“party to a merger,” or “party to a share exchange” see Section 11.01.

“preferred shares,” see § 13.01.

“proceeding,” see § 8.50.

“professional corporation,” see Model Professional Corporation Supplement.

“record shareholder,” see § 13.01.

“related person,” see § 8.60.

“required disclosure,” see § 8.60.

“senior executive,” see § 13.01.

“share exchange,” see § 11.01.

“shares,” see §§ 6.27 & 6.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“shareholder,” see §§ 7.40 & 13.01.

“statutory close corporation,” see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

“survivor,” see § 11.01.

“time of commitment,” see § 8.60.

§ 1.41. NOTICE

(a) Notice under this Act must be in writing unless oral notice is reasonable under the circumstances. Notice by electronic transmission is written notice.

(b) Notice may be communicated in person; by mail or other method of delivery; or by telephone, voice mail or other electronic means. If these forms of personal notice are impracticable, notice may be communicated by a newspaper of general circulation in the area where published, or by radio, television, or other form of public broadcast communication.

(c) Written notice by a domestic or foreign corporation to its shareholder, if in a comprehensible form, is effective (i) upon deposit in the United States mail, if mailed postpaid and correctly addressed to the shareholder’s address shown in the corporation’s current record of shareholders, or (ii) when electronically transmitted to the shareholder in a manner authorized by the shareholder.

(d) Written notice to a domestic or foreign corporation (authorized to transact business in this state) may be addressed to its registered agent at its registered office or to the corporation or its secretary at its principal office shown in its most recent annual report or, in the case of a foreign corporation that has not yet delivered an annual report, in its application for a certificate of authority.

(e) Except as provided in subsection (c), written notice, if in a comprehensible form, is effective at the earliest of the following:

(1) when received;

(2) five days after its deposit in the United States Mail, if mailed postpaid and correctly addressed;

(3) on the date shown on the return receipt, if sent by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, and the receipt is signed by or on behalf of the addressee.

(f) Oral notice is effective when communicated, if communicated in a comprehensible manner.

(g) If this Act prescribes notice requirements for particular circumstances, those requirements govern. If articles of incorporation or bylaws prescribe notice requirements, not inconsistent with this section or other provisions of this Act, those requirements govern.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Application for certificate of authority, see § 15.03.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

“Electronic transmission,” see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Record of shareholders, see § 16.01.

Special notice requirements:

derivative proceedings, see § 7.40.

resignation of registered agent, see §§ 5.03 & 15.09.

service on corporation, see §§ 5.04 & 15.10.

§ 1.42. NUMBER OF SHAREHOLDERS

(a) For purposes of this Act, the following identified as a shareholder in a corporation’s current record of shareholders constitutes one shareholder:

(1) three or fewer co-owners;

(2) a corporation, partnership, trust, estate, or other entity;

(3) the trustees, guardians, custodians, or other fiduciaries of a single trust, estate, or account.

(b) For purposes of this Act, shareholdings registered in substantially similar names constitute one shareholder if it is reasonable to believe that the names represent the same person.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Board of directors, see § 8.01.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

“Entity” defined, see § 1.40.

Record of shareholders, see §§ 7.20 & 16.01.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

Voting trusts, see § 7.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 2 INCORPORATION

- § 2.01. Incorporators
- § 2.02. Articles of incorporation
- § 2.03. Incorporation
- § 2.04. Liability for preincorporation transactions
- § 2.05. Organization of corporation
- § 2.06. Bylaws
- § 2.07. Emergency bylaws

§ 2.01. INCORPORATORS

One or more persons may act as the incorporator or incorporators of a corporation by delivering articles of incorporation to the secretary of state for filing.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.
- “Deliver,” see § 1.40.
- Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.
- Filing fees, see § 1.22.
- Filing requirements, see § 1.20.
- Organization of corporation by incorporators, see § 2.05.
- “Person” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 2.02. ARTICLES OF INCORPORATION

- (a) The articles of incorporation must set forth:
 - (1) a corporate name for the corporation that satisfies the requirements of section 4.01;
 - (2) the number of shares the corporation is authorized to issue;
 - (3) the street address of the corporation’s initial registered office and the name of its initial registered agent at that office; and
 - (4) the name and address of each incorporator.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The articles of incorporation may set forth:

- (1) the names and addresses of the individuals who are to serve as the initial directors;
- (2) provisions not inconsistent with law regarding:
 - (i) the purpose or purposes for which the corporation is organized;
 - (ii) managing the business and regulating the affairs of the corporation;
 - (iii) defining, limiting, and regulating the powers of the corporation, its board of directors, and shareholders;
 - (iv) a par value for authorized shares or classes of shares;
 - (v) the imposition of personal liability on shareholders for the debts of the corporation to a specified extent and upon specified conditions;
- (3) any provision that under this Act is required or permitted to be set forth in the bylaws;
- (4) a provision eliminating or limiting the liability of a director to the corporation or its shareholders for money damages for any action taken, or any failure to take any action, as a director, except liability for (A) the amount of a financial benefit received by a director to which he is not entitled; (B) an intentional infliction of harm on the corporation or the shareholders; (C) a violation of section 8.33; or (D) an intentional violation of criminal law; and
- (5) a provision permitting or making obligatory indemnification of a director for liability (as defined in section 8.50(5)) to any person for any action taken, or any failure to take any action, as a director, except liability for (A) receipt of a financial benefit to which he is not entitled, (B) an intentional infliction of harm on the corporation or its shareholders, (C) a violation of section 8.33, or (D) an intentional violation of criminal law.

(c) The articles of incorporation need not set forth any of the corporate powers enumerated in this Act.

(d) Provisions of the articles of incorporation may be made dependent upon facts objectively ascertainable outside the articles of incorporation in accordance with section 1.20(k).

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles, see ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see §§ 2.06, 2.07, ch. 10B.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

Conflict of interest, see ch. 8F.

Duration of corporate existence, see § 3.02.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Incorporators, see § 2.01.

Indemnification, see ch. 8E.

“Liability” defined, see § 8.50(5).

Liability of shareholders, see § 6.22.

Powers, see § 3.02.

Professional corporations, see Model Professional Corporation Supplement.

Purposes, see § 3.01.

Restated articles, see § 10.07.

Share classes, see § 6.01.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 2.03. INCORPORATION

(a) Unless a delayed effective date is specified, the corporate existence begins when the articles of incorporation are filed.

(b) The secretary of state's filing of the articles of incorporation is conclusive proof that the incorporators satisfied all conditions precedent to incorporation except in a proceeding by the state to cancel or revoke the incorporation or involuntarily dissolve the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporations de facto, see § 2.04.

Dissolution, see ch. 14.

Duration, see § 3.02.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Secretary of state's filing duty, see § 1.25.

§ 2.04. LIABILITY FOR PREINCORPORATION TRANSACTIONS

All persons purporting to act as or on behalf of a corporation, knowing there was no incorporation under this Act, are jointly and severally liable for all liabilities created while so acting.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Incorporation, see § 2.03.

"Person" defined, see § 1.40.

§ 2.05. ORGANIZATION OF CORPORATION

(a) After incorporation:

(1) if initial directors are named in the articles of incorporation, the initial directors shall hold an organizational meeting, at the call of a majority of the directors, to complete the organization of the corporation by appointing officers, adopting bylaws, and carrying on any other business brought before the meeting;

(2) if initial directors are not named in the articles, the incorporator or incorporators shall hold an organizational meeting at the call of a majority of the incorporators:

(i) to elect directors and complete the organization of the corporation; or

(ii) to elect a board of directors who shall complete the organization of the

corporation.

(b) Action required or permitted by this Act to be taken by incorporators at an organizational meeting may be taken without a meeting if the action taken is evidenced by one or more written consents describing the action taken and signed by each incorporator.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) An organizational meeting may be held in or out of this state.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Bylaws, see §§ 2.06 & 2.07.

Director action without meeting, see § 8.21.

Incorporators, see § 2.01.

§ 2.06. BYLAWS

(a) The incorporators or board of directors of a corporation shall adopt initial bylaws for the corporation.

(b) The bylaws of a corporation may contain any provision for managing the business and regulating the affairs of the corporation that is not inconsistent with law or the articles of incorporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment, see §§ 10.20, 10.21.

Directors:

 action without meeting, see § 8.21.

 committees, see § 8.25.

 election by shareholders, see § 7.28.

 emergency bylaws, see § 2.07.

 majority vote at meeting, see § 8.24.

 nominee registration of shares, see § 7.23.

 notice of meeting, see § 8.22.

 number, see § 8.03.

 participation in meeting, see § 8.20.

 qualifications, see § 8.02.

 quorum for meeting, see § 8.24.

 supermajority vote at meeting, see § 8.24.

Officers:

 appointment, see § 8.40.

 duties, see § 8.41.

Organizing corporation, see § 2.05.

Record date, see § 7.07.

Share transfer restrictions, see § 6.27.

Shareholders' meeting notice, see § 7.05.

Shareholders' meetings, see §§ 7.01 & 7.02.

Shares without certificates, see § 6.26.

Subscriptions, see § 6.20.

Supermajority vote at shareholders' meeting, see § 7.27.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 2.07. EMERGENCY BYLAWS

(a) Unless the articles of incorporation provide otherwise, the board of directors of a corporation may adopt bylaws to be effective only in an emergency defined in subsection (d). The emergency bylaws, which are subject to amendment or repeal by the shareholders, may make all provisions necessary for managing the corporation during the emergency, including:

- (1) procedures for calling a meeting of the board of directors;
- (2) quorum requirements for the meeting; and
- (3) designation of additional or substitute directors.

(b) All provisions of the regular bylaws consistent with the emergency bylaws remain effective during the emergency. The emergency bylaws are not effective after the emergency ends.

(c) Corporate action taken in good faith in accordance with the emergency bylaws:

- (1) binds the corporation; and
- (2) may not be used to impose liability on a corporate director, officer, employee, or agent.

(d) An emergency exists for purposes of this section if a quorum of the corporation's directors cannot readily be assembled because of some catastrophic event.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of bylaws, see §§ 10.20, 10.21.

Bylaws generally, see § 2.06.

Emergency powers without bylaw provision, see § 3.03.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 3 PURPOSES AND POWERS

- § 3.01. Purposes
- § 3.02. General powers
- § 3.03. Emergency powers
- § 3.04. Ultra vires

§ 3.01. PURPOSES

- (a) Every corporation incorporated under this Act has the purpose of engaging in any lawful business unless a more limited purpose is set forth in the articles of incorporation.
- (b) A corporation engaging in a business that is subject to regulation under another statute of this state may incorporate under this Act only if permitted by, and subject to all limitations of, the other statute.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Foreign corporations, see § 15.05.
Professional corporations, see Model Professional Corporation Supplement.
Statement of purpose in articles, see § 2.02.

§ 3.02. GENERAL POWERS

Unless its articles of incorporation provide otherwise, every corporation has perpetual duration and succession in its corporate name and has the same powers as an individual to do all things necessary or convenient to carry out its business and affairs, including without limitation power:

- (1) to sue and be sued, complain and defend in its corporate name;
- (2) to have a corporate seal, which may be altered at will, and to use it, or a facsimile of it, by impressing or affixing it or in any other manner reproducing it;
- (3) to make and amend bylaws, not inconsistent with its articles of incorporation or with the laws of this state, for managing the business and regulating the affairs of the corporation;
- (4) to purchase, receive, lease, or otherwise acquire, and own, hold, improve, use, and otherwise deal with, real or personal property, or any legal or equitable interest in property, wherever located;
- (5) to sell, convey, mortgage, pledge, lease, exchange, and otherwise dispose of all or any part of its property;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(6) to purchase, receive, subscribe for, or otherwise acquire; own, hold, vote, use, sell, mortgage, lend, pledge, or otherwise dispose of; and deal in and with shares or other interests in, or obligations of, any other entity;

(7) to make contracts and guarantees, incur liabilities, borrow money, issue its notes, bonds, and other obligations (which may be convertible into or include the option to purchase other securities of the corporation), and secure any of its obligations by mortgage or pledge of any of its property, franchises, or income;

(8) to lend money, invest and reinvest its funds, and receive and hold real and personal property as security for repayment;

(9) to be a promoter, partner, member, associate, or manager of any partnership, joint venture, trust, or other entity;

(10) to conduct its business, locate offices, and exercise the powers granted by this Act within or without this state;

(11) to elect directors and appoint officers, employees, and agents of the corporation, define their duties, fix their compensation, and lend them money and credit;

(12) to pay pensions and establish pension plans, pension trusts, profit sharing plans, share bonus plans, share option plans, and benefit or incentive plans for any or all of its current or former directors, officers, employees, and agents;

(13) to make donations for the public welfare or for charitable, scientific, or educational purposes;

(14) to transact any lawful business that will aid governmental policy;

(15) to make payments or donations, or do any other act, not inconsistent with law, that furthers the business and affairs of the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Bylaws, see §§ 2.06, 2.07, 10.20.

Compensation of directors, see § 8.11.

Disposition of assets, see ch. 12.

“Employee” defined, see § 1.40.

“Entity” defined, see § 1.40.

Foreign corporations, see § 15.05.

Indemnification, see ch. 8E.

“State” defined, see § 1.40.

Ultra vires, see § 3.04.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 3.03. EMERGENCY POWERS

(a) In anticipation of or during an emergency defined in subsection (d), the board of directors of a corporation may:

- (1) modify lines of succession to accommodate the incapacity of any director, officer, employee, or agent; and
- (2) relocate the principal office, designate alternative principal offices or regional offices, or authorize the officers to do so.

(b) During an emergency defined in subsection (d), unless emergency bylaws provide otherwise:

- (1) notice of a meeting of the board of directors need be given only to those directors whom it is practicable to reach and may be given in any practicable manner, including by publication and radio; and
- (2) one or more officers of the corporation present at a meeting of the board of directors may be deemed to be directors for the meeting, in order of rank and within the same rank in order of seniority, as necessary to achieve a quorum.

(c) Corporate action taken in good faith during an emergency under this section to further the ordinary business affairs of the corporation:

- (1) binds the corporation; and
- (2) may not be used to impose liability on a corporate director, officer, employee, or agent.

(d) An emergency exists for purposes of this section if a quorum of the corporation's directors cannot readily be assembled because of some catastrophic event.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporate powers, see § 3.02.

Emergency bylaws, see § 2.07.

"Notice" defined, see § 1.41.

Notice of directors' meeting, see § 8.22.

"Principal office" defined, see § 1.40.

§ 3.04. ULTRA VIRES

(a) Except as provided in subsection (b), the validity of corporate action may not be challenged on the ground that the corporation lacks or lacked power to act.

(b) A corporation's power to act may be challenged:

- (1) in a proceeding by a shareholder against the corporation to enjoin the act;
- (2) in a proceeding by the corporation, directly, derivatively, or through a receiver, trustee, or other legal representative, against an incumbent or former director, officer, employee, or agent of the corporation; or
- (3) in a proceeding by the attorney general under section 14.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) In a shareholder's proceeding under subsection (b)(1) to enjoin an unauthorized corporate act, the court may enjoin or set aside the act, if equitable and if all affected persons are parties to the proceeding, and may award damages for loss (other than anticipated profits) suffered by the corporation or another party because of enjoining the unauthorized act.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporate powers, see § 3.02.

Corporate purposes, see § 3.01.

Derivative proceedings, see ch. 7D.

Director standards of conduct, see §§ 8.30, 8.60-8.63.

Dissolution, see ch. 14.

"Employee" defined, see § 1.40.

"Proceeding" defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 4 NAME

- § 4.01. Corporate name
- § 4.02. Reserved name
- § 4.03. Registered name

§ 4.01. CORPORATE NAME

(a) A corporate name:

(1) must contain the word “corporation,” “incorporated,” “company,” or “limited,” or the abbreviation “corp.,” “inc.,” “co.,” or “ltd.,” or words or abbreviations of like import in another language; and

(2) may not contain language stating or implying that the corporation is organized for a purpose other than that permitted by section 3.01 and its articles of incorporation.

(b) Except as authorized by subsections (c) and (d), a corporate name must be distinguishable upon the records of the secretary of state from:

(1) the corporate name of a corporation incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state;

(2) a corporate name reserved or registered under section 4.02 or 4.03;

(3) the fictitious name adopted by a foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state because its real name is unavailable; and

(4) the corporate name of a not-for-profit corporation incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state.

(c) A corporation may apply to the secretary of state for authorization to use a name that is not distinguishable upon his records from one or more of the names described in subsection (b). The secretary of state shall authorize use of the name applied for if:

(1) the other corporation consents to the use in writing and submits an undertaking in form satisfactory to the secretary of state to change its name to a name that is distinguishable upon the records of the secretary of state from the name of the applying corporation; or

(2) the applicant delivers to the secretary of state a certified copy of the final judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction establishing the applicant’s right to use the name applied for in this state.

(d) A corporation may use the name (including the fictitious name) of another domestic or foreign corporation that is used in this state if the other corporation is incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state and the proposed user corporation

(1) has merged with the other corporation;

(2) has been formed by reorganization of the other corporation; or

(3) has acquired all or substantially all of the assets, including the corporate name, of the other corporation.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(e) This Act does not control the use of fictitious names.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Foreign corporations, see ch. 15.

Professional corporations, see Model Professional Corporation Supplement.

Registered name, see § 4.03.

Reserved name, see § 4.02.

Statement of name in articles, see § 2.02.

§ 4.02. RESERVED NAME

(a) A person may reserve the exclusive use of a corporate name, including a fictitious name for a foreign corporation whose corporate name is not available, by delivering an application to the secretary of state for filing. The application must set forth the name and address of the applicant and the name proposed to be reserved. If the secretary of state finds that the corporate name applied for is available, he shall reserve the name for the applicant’s exclusive use for a nonrenewable 120-day period.

(b) The owner of a reserved corporate name may transfer the reservation to another person by delivering to the secretary of state a signed notice of the transfer that states the name and address of the transferee.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Availability of names, Section 4.01.

Consent to use corporate name, see § 4.01.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Foreign corporation, see ch. 15.

“Person” defined, see § 1.40.

Registered name, see § 4.03.

§ 4.03. REGISTERED NAME

(a) A foreign corporation may register its corporate name, or its corporate name with any addition required by section 15.06, if the name is distinguishable upon the records of the secretary of state from the corporate names that are not available under section 4.01(b).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) A foreign corporation registers its corporate name, or its corporate name with any addition required by section 15.06, by delivering to the secretary of state for filing an application:

(1) setting forth its corporate name, or its corporate name with any addition required by section 15.06, the state or country and date of its incorporation, and a brief description of the nature of the business in which it is engaged; and

(2) accompanied by a certificate of existence (or a document of similar import) from the state or country of incorporation.

(c) The name is registered for the applicant's exclusive use upon the effective date of the application.

(d) A foreign corporation whose registration is effective may renew it for successive years by delivering to the secretary of state for filing a renewal application, which complies with the requirements of subsection (b), between October 1 and December 31 of the preceding year. The renewal application when filed renews the registration for the following calendar year.

(e) A foreign corporation whose registration is effective may thereafter qualify as a foreign corporation under the registered name or consent in writing to the use of that name by a corporation thereafter incorporated under this Act or by another foreign corporation thereafter authorized to transact business in this state. The registration terminates when the domestic corporation is incorporated or the foreign corporation qualifies or consents to the qualification of another foreign corporation under the registered name.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificate of existence, see §§ 1.28 & 15.03.

Consent to use corporate name, see § 4.01.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Foreign corporations, see ch. 15.

Reserved name, see § 4.02.

“State” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 5 OFFICE AND AGENT

- § 5.01. Registered office and registered agent
- § 5.02. Change of registered office or registered agent
- § 5.03. Resignation of registered agent
- § 5.04. Service on corporation

§ 5.01. REGISTERED OFFICE AND REGISTERED AGENT

Each corporation must continuously maintain in this state:

- (1) a registered office that may be the same as any of its places of business; and
- (2) a registered agent, who may be:
 - (i) an individual who resides in this state and whose business office is identical with the registered office;
 - (ii) a domestic corporation or not-for-profit domestic corporation whose business office is identical with the registered office; or
 - (iii) a foreign corporation or not-for-profit foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state whose business office is identical with the registered office.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Annual report disclosure, see § 16.21.
- Changing registered office or agent, see § 5.02.
- Effect of dissolution of corporation, see § 14.05.
- Foreign corporations, see ch. 15.
- Involuntary dissolution for failure to appoint and maintain registered agent and office, see § 14.20.
- Naming registered agent and office in articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.
- “Principal office”:
 - defined, see § 1.40.
 - designated in annual report, see § 16.21.
 - Resignation of registered agent, see § 5.03.
 - Service on corporation, see § 5.04.

§ 5.02. CHANGE OF REGISTERED OFFICE OR REGISTERED AGENT

- (a) A corporation may change its registered office or registered agent by delivering to the secretary of state for filing a statement of change that sets forth:
 - (1) the name of the corporation;
 - (2) the street address of its current registered office;
 - (3) if the current registered office is to be changed, the street address of the new registered office;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (4) the name of its current registered agent;
- (5) if the current registered agent is to be changed, the name of the new registered agent and the new agent's written consent (either on the statement or attached to it) to the appointment; and
- (6) that after the change or changes are made, the street addresses of its registered office and the business office of its registered agent will be identical.

(b) If a registered agent changes the street address of his business office, he may change the street address of the registered office of any corporation for which he is the registered agent by notifying the corporation in writing of the change and signing (either manually or in facsimile) and delivering to the secretary of state for filing a statement that complies with the requirements of subsection (a) and recites that the corporation has been notified of the change.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Deletion of initial agent and office from articles of incorporation, see § 10.05.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effect of dissolution of corporation, see § 14.05.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Involuntary dissolution for failure to file notice of change of registered agent or office, see § 14.20.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Resignation of registered agent, see § 5.03.

§ 5.03. RESIGNATION OF REGISTERED AGENT

(a) A registered agent may resign his agency appointment by signing and delivering to the secretary of state for filing the signed original and two exact or conformed copies of a statement of resignation. The statement may include a statement that the registered office is also discontinued.

(b) After filing the statement the secretary of state shall mail one copy to the registered office (if not discontinued) and the other copy to the corporation at its principal office.

(c) The agency appointment is terminated, and the registered office discontinued if so provided, on the 31st day after the date on which the statement was filed.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Change of registered agent, see § 5.02.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effect of dissolution of corporation, see § 14.05.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

§ 5.04. SERVICE ON CORPORATION

(a) A corporation’s registered agent is the corporation’s agent for service of process, notice, or demand required or permitted by law to be served on the corporation.

(b) If a corporation has no registered agent, or the agent cannot with reasonable diligence be served, the corporation may be served by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, addressed to the secretary of the corporation at its principal office. Service is perfected under this subsection at the earliest of:

(1) the date the corporation receives the mail;

(2) the date shown on the return receipt, if signed on behalf of the corporation; or

(3) five days after its deposit in the United States Mail, as evidenced by the postmark, if mailed postpaid and correctly addressed.

(c) This section does not prescribe the only means, or necessarily the required means of serving a corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Foreign corporations, see ch. 15.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Registered office and agent:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see § 5.01.

“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 6 SHARES AND DISTRIBUTIONS

Subchapter A. SHARES

- § 6.01. Authorized shares
- § 6.02. Terms of class or series determined by board of directors
- § 6.03. Issued and outstanding shares
- § 6.04. Fractional shares

Subchapter B. ISSUANCE OF SHARES

- § 6.20. Subscription for shares before incorporation
- § 6.21. Issuance of shares
- § 6.22. Liability of shareholders
- § 6.23. Share dividends
- § 6.24. Share options
- § 6.25. Form and content of certificates
- § 6.26. Shares without certificates
- § 6.27. Restriction on transfer of shares and other securities
- § 6.28. Expense of issue

Subchapter C. SUBSEQUENT ACQUISITION OF SHARES BY SHAREHOLDERS AND CORPORATION

- § 6.30. Shareholders' preemptive rights
- § 6.31. Corporation's acquisition of its own shares

Subchapter D. DISTRIBUTIONS

- § 6.40. Distributions to shareholders

Subchapter A. SHARES

§ 6.01. AUTHORIZED SHARES

(a) The articles of incorporation must set forth any classes of shares and series of shares within a class, and the number of shares of each class and series, that the corporation is authorized to issue. If more than one class or series of shares is authorized, the articles of incorporation must prescribe a distinguishing designation for each class or series and must describe, prior to the issuance of shares of a class or series, the terms, including the preferences, rights, and limitations, of that class or series. Except to the extent varied as permitted by this section, all shares of a class or series must have terms, including preferences, rights and limitations, that are identical with those of other shares of the same class or series.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The articles of incorporation must authorize:

- (1) one or more classes or series of shares that together have unlimited voting rights, and
- (2) one or more classes or series of shares (which may be the same class or classes as those with voting rights) that together are entitled to receive the net assets of the corporation upon dissolution.

(c) The articles of incorporation may authorize one or more classes or series of shares that:

- (1) have special, conditional, or limited voting rights, or no right to vote, except to the extent otherwise provided by this Act;
- (2) are redeemable or convertible as specified in the articles of incorporation:
 - (i) at the option of the corporation, the shareholder, or another person or upon the occurrence of a specified event;
 - (ii) for cash, indebtedness, securities, or other property; and
 - (iii) at prices and in amounts specified, or determined in accordance with a formula;
- (3) entitle the holders to distributions calculated in any manner, including dividends that may be cumulative, noncumulative, or partially cumulative; or
- (4) have preference over any other class or series of shares with respect to distributions, including distributions upon the dissolution of the corporation.

(d) Terms of shares may be made dependent upon facts objectively ascertainable outside the articles of incorporation in accordance with section 1.20(k).

(e) Any of the terms of shares may vary among holders of the same class or series so long as such variations are expressly set forth in the articles of incorporation.

(f) The description of the preferences, rights and limitations of classes or series of shares in subsection (c) is not exhaustive.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Note: For samples of descriptions of shares, see part 1 of the Official Comment to this section.

Amendment of articles:

generally, see § 10.05.

terms of series or class, see § 6.02.

Articles of incorporation generally, see § 2.02.

Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.

Certificates for shares, see § 6.25.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

Debt securities, see § 3.02.

Distributions, see § 6.40.

Extrinsic facts, see § 1.20(k)

Fractional shares, see § 6.04.

Nonvoting shareholders' right to notice, see §§ 7.04, 10.03, 11.04, 12.02, 14.02.

Options, see § 6.24.

Outstanding shares, see § 6.03.

Preemptive rights, see § 6.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Redemption, see § 6.31.

Series of shares, see § 6.02.

Voting by nonvoting shares, see § 10.04.

Voting by voting groups of shares, see §§ 1.40, 7.25, 7.26.

Voting rights generally, see § 7.21.

§ 6.02. TERMS OF CLASS OR SERIES DETERMINED BY BOARD OF DIRECTORS

(a) If the articles of incorporation so provide, the board of directors is authorized, without shareholder approval, to:

(1) classify any unissued shares into one or more classes or into one or more series within a class,

(2) reclassify any unissued shares of any class into one or more classes or into one or more series within one or more classes, or

(3) reclassify any unissued shares of any series of any class into one or more classes or into one or more series within a class.

(b) If the board of directors acts pursuant to subsection (a), it must determine the terms, including the preferences, rights and limitations, to the same extent permitted under section 6.01, of:

(1) any class of shares before the issuance of any shares of that class, or

(2) any series within a class before the issuance of any shares of that series.

(c) Before issuing any shares of a class or series created under this section, the corporation must deliver to the secretary of state for filing articles of amendment setting forth the terms determined under subsection (a).

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see ch. 10A.

Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.

Certificates for shares, see § 6.25.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Distributions, see § 6.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Series or class as voting group, see §§ 1.40, 7.25, 7.26, 10.04.

Terms of shares, see § 6.01(c).

Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 6.03. ISSUED AND OUTSTANDING SHARES

(a) A corporation may issue the number of shares of each class or series authorized by the articles of incorporation. Shares that are issued are outstanding shares until they are reacquired, redeemed, converted, or cancelled.

(b) The reacquisition, redemption, or conversion of outstanding shares is subject to the limitations of subsection (c) of this section and to section 6.40.

(c) At all times that shares of the corporation are outstanding, one or more shares that together have unlimited voting rights and one or more shares that together are entitled to receive the net assets of the corporation upon dissolution must be outstanding.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Cancellation of shares, see § 6.21.

Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.

Certificates for shares, see § 6.25.

Classes of shares generally, see § 6.01.

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

Dissolution of corporation, see ch. 14.

Reacquisition of shares, see § 6.31.

Redemption of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.31.

Share dividends, see § 6.23

Voting by nonvoting class of shares, see § 10.04.

Voting by voting groups, see §§ 1.40, 7.25, 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 6.04. FRACTIONAL SHARES

(a) A corporation may:

(1) issue fractions of a share or pay in money the value of fractions of a share;

(2) arrange for disposition of fractional shares by the shareholders;

(3) issue scrip in registered or bearer form entitling the holder to receive a full share upon surrendering enough scrip to equal a full share.

(b) Each certificate representing scrip must be conspicuously labeled “scrip” and must contain the information required by section 6.25(b).

(c) The holder of a fractional share is entitled to exercise the rights of a shareholder, including the right to vote, to receive dividends, and to participate in the assets of the corporation upon liquidation. The holder of scrip is not entitled to any of these rights unless the scrip provides for them.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) The board of directors may authorize the issuance of scrip subject to any condition considered desirable, including:

- (1) that the scrip will become void if not exchanged for full shares before a specified date; and
- (2) that the shares for which the scrip is exchangeable may be sold and the proceeds paid to the scripholders.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Redemption, see §§ 6.01 & 6.31.

Share dividends, see § 6.23.

Subchapter B.

ISSUANCE OF SHARES

§ 6.20. SUBSCRIPTION FOR SHARES BEFORE INCORPORATION

(a) A subscription for shares entered into before incorporation is irrevocable for six months unless the subscription agreement provides a longer or shorter period or all the subscribers agree to revocation.

(b) The board of directors may determine the payment terms of subscription for shares that were entered into before incorporation, unless the subscription agreement specifies them. A call for payment by the board of directors must be uniform so far as practicable as to all shares of the same class or series, unless the subscription agreement specifies otherwise.

(c) Shares issued pursuant to subscriptions entered into before incorporation are fully paid and nonassessable when the corporation receives the consideration specified in the subscription agreement.

(d) If a subscriber defaults in payment of money or property under a subscription agreement entered into before incorporation, the corporation may collect the amount owed as any other debt. Alternatively, unless the subscription agreement provides otherwise, the corporation may rescind the agreement and may sell the shares if the debt remains unpaid for more than 20 days after the corporation sends written demand for payment to the subscriber.

(e) A subscription agreement entered into after incorporation is a contract between the subscriber and the corporation subject to section 6.21.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 6.21. ISSUANCE OF SHARES

- (a) The powers granted in this section to the board of directors may be reserved to the shareholders by the articles of incorporation.
- (b) The board of directors may authorize shares to be issued for consideration consisting of any tangible or intangible property or benefit to the corporation, including cash, promissory notes, services performed, contracts for services to be performed, or other securities of the corporation.
- (c) Before the corporation issues shares, the board of directors must determine that the consideration received or to be received for shares to be issued is adequate. That determination by the board of directors is conclusive insofar as the adequacy of consideration for the issuance of shares relates to whether the shares are validly issued, fully paid, and nonassessable.
- (d) When the corporation receives the consideration for which the board of directors authorized the issuance of shares, the shares issued therefor are fully paid and nonassessable.
- (e) The corporation may place in escrow shares issued for a contract for future services or benefits or a promissory note, or make other arrangements to restrict the transfer of the shares, and may credit distributions in respect of the shares against their purchase price, until the services are performed, the note is paid, or the benefits received. If the services are not performed, the note is not paid, or the benefits are not received, the shares escrowed or restricted and the distributions credited may be cancelled in whole or part.
- (f) (1) An issuance of shares or other securities convertible into or rights exercisable for shares, in a transaction or a series of integrated transactions, requires approval of the shareholders, at a meeting at which a quorum consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter exists, if:
- (i) the shares, other securities, or rights are issued for consideration other than cash or cash equivalents, and
 - (ii) the voting power of shares that are issued and issuable as a result of the transaction or series of integrated transactions will comprise more than 20 percent of the voting power of the shares of the corporation that were outstanding immediately before the transaction.
- (2) In this subsection:
- (i) For purposes of determining the voting power of shares issued and issuable as a result of a transaction or series of integrated transactions, the voting power of shares shall be the greater of (A) the voting power of the shares to be issued, or (B) the voting power of the shares that would be outstanding after giving effect to the conversion of convertible shares and other securities and the exercise of rights to be issued.
 - (ii) A series of transactions is integrated if consummation of one transaction is made contingent on consummation of one or more of the other transactions.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.
Certificates for shares, see § 6.25.
Committees of the board, see § 8.25.
Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.
Distributions, see § 6.40.
Liability of subscribers and shareholders, see § 6.22.
Par value shares, see § 2.02.
Preincorporation subscriptions for shares, see § 6.20.
Share dividends, see § 6.23.
Share options, see § 6.24.
Share transfer restrictions, see § 6.27.
Voting power, see § 1.40.

§ 6.22. LIABILITY OF SHAREHOLDERS

(a) A purchaser from a corporation of its own shares is not liable to the corporation or its creditors with respect to the shares except to pay the consideration for which the shares were authorized to be issued (section 6.21) or specified in the subscription agreement (section 6.20).

(b) Unless otherwise provided in the articles of incorporation, a shareholder of a corporation is not personally liable for the acts or debts of the corporation except that he may become personally liable by reason of his own acts or conduct.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.
Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.
Share transfer restrictions, see § 6.27.
Subscriptions for shares, Section 6.20.

§ 6.23. SHARE DIVIDENDS

(a) Unless the articles of incorporation provide otherwise, shares may be issued pro rata and without consideration to the corporation's shareholders or to the shareholders of one or more classes or series. An issuance of shares under this subsection is a share dividend.

(b) Shares of one class or series may not be issued as a share dividend in respect of shares of another class or series unless (1) the articles of incorporation so authorize, (2) a majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the class or series to be issued approve the issue, or (3) there are no outstanding shares of the class or series to be issued.

(c) If the board of directors does not fix the record date for determining shareholders entitled to a share dividend, it is the date the board of directors authorizes the share dividend.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action by shareholders, see §§ 7.01-7.04.

Classes of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

Consideration for shares, § 6.21.

Distributions generally, see § 6.40.

Fractional shares, see § 6.04.

Record date, see § 7.07.

Series of shares, see § 6.02.

§ 6.24. SHARE OPTIONS

(a) A corporation may issue rights, options, or warrants for the purchase of shares or other securities of the corporation. The board of directors shall determine (i) the terms upon which the rights, options, or warrants are issued and (ii) the terms, including the consideration for which the shares or other securities are to be issued. The authorization by the board of directors for the corporation to issue such rights, options, or warrants constitutes authorization of the issuance of the shares or other securities for which the rights, options or warrants are exercisable.

(b) The terms and conditions of such rights, options or warrants, including those outstanding on the effective date of this section, may include, without limitation, restrictions or conditions that:

(1) preclude or limit the exercise, transfer or receipt of such rights, options or warrants by any person or persons owning or offering to acquire a specified number or percentage of the outstanding shares or other securities of the corporation or by any transferee or transferees of any such person or persons, or

(2) invalidate or void such rights, options or warrants held by any such person or persons or any such transferee or transferees.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Committees of the board, see § 8.25.

Compensation, see § 3.02.

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Distributions, see § 6.40.

§ 6.25. FORM AND CONTENT OF CERTIFICATES

(a) Shares may but need not be represented by certificates. Unless this Act or another statute expressly provides otherwise, the rights and obligations of shareholders are identical whether or not their shares are represented by certificates.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) At a minimum each share certificate must state on its face:

- (1) the name of the issuing corporation and that it is organized under the law of this state;
- (2) the name of the person to whom issued; and
- (3) the number and class of shares and the designation of the series, if any, the certificate represents.

(c) If the issuing corporation is authorized to issue different classes of shares or different series within a class, the designations, relative rights, preferences, and limitations applicable to each class and the variations in rights, preferences, and limitations determined for each series (and the authority of the board of directors to determine variations for future series) must be summarized on the front or back of each certificate. Alternatively, each certificate may state conspicuously on its front or back that the corporation will furnish the shareholder this information on request in writing and without charge.

(d) Each share certificate (1) must be signed (either manually or in facsimile) by two officers designated in the bylaws or by the board of directors and (2) may bear the corporate seal or its facsimile.

(e) If the person who signed (either manually or in facsimile) a share certificate no longer holds office when the certificate is issued, the certificate is nevertheless valid.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.

Classes of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

“Conspicuously” defined, see § 1.40.

Descriptions of classes, see § 6.01.

Officers, see § 8.40.

Series of shares, see § 6.02.

Share transfer restrictions, see § 6.27.

§ 6.26. SHARES WITHOUT CERTIFICATES

(a) Unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws provide otherwise, the board of directors of a corporation may authorize the issue of some or all of the shares of any or all of its classes or series without certificates. The authorization does not affect shares already represented by certificates until they are surrendered to the corporation.

(b) Within a reasonable time after the issue or transfer of shares without certificates, the corporation shall send the shareholder a written statement of the information required on certificates by section 6.25(b) and (c), and, if applicable, section 6.27.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificates for shares, see § 6.25.

Information on share certificates, see § 6.25.

Share transfer restrictions, see § 6.27.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 6.27. RESTRICTION ON TRANSFER OF SHARES AND OTHER SECURITIES

(a) The articles of incorporation, bylaws, an agreement among shareholders, or an agreement between shareholders and the corporation may impose restrictions on the transfer or registration of transfer of shares of the corporation. A restriction does not affect shares issued before the restriction was adopted unless the holders of the shares are parties to the restriction agreement or voted in favor of the restriction.

(b) A restriction on the transfer or registration of transfer of shares is valid and enforceable against the holder or a transferee of the holder if the restriction is authorized by this section and its existence is noted conspicuously on the front or back of the certificate or is contained in the information statement required by section 6.26(b). Unless so noted, a restriction is not enforceable against a person without knowledge of the restriction.

(c) A restriction on the transfer or registration of transfer of shares is authorized:

- (1) to maintain the corporation's status when it is dependent on the number or identity of its shareholders;
- (2) to preserve exemptions under federal or state securities law;
- (3) for any other reasonable purpose.

(d) A restriction on the transfer or registration of transfer of shares may:

- (1) obligate the shareholder first to offer the corporation or other persons (separately, consecutively, or simultaneously) an opportunity to acquire the restricted shares;
- (2) obligate the corporation or other persons (separately, consecutively, or simultaneously) to acquire the restricted shares;
- (3) require the corporation, the holders of any class of its shares, or another person to approve the transfer of the restricted shares, if the requirement is not manifestly unreasonable;
- (4) prohibit the transfer of the restricted shares to designated persons or classes of persons, if the prohibition is not manifestly unreasonable.

(e) For purposes of this section, "shares" includes a security convertible into or carrying a right to subscribe for or acquire shares.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificates for shares, see § 6.25.

Classes of shares, see § 6.01.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

"Conspicuously" defined, see § 1.40.

Debt securities, see § 3.02.

Information statement, see §§ 6.25 & 6.26.

Professional corporations, see Model Professional Corporation Supplement.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 6.28. EXPENSE OF ISSUE

A corporation may pay the expenses of selling or underwriting its shares, and of organizing or reorganizing the corporation, from the consideration received for shares.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

Fully paid shares, see § 6.21.

Liability for share consideration, see § 6.22.

Subchapter C.

SUBSEQUENT ACQUISITION OF SHARES BY SHAREHOLDERS AND CORPORATION

§ 6.30. SHAREHOLDERS' PREEMPTIVE RIGHTS

(a) The shareholders of a corporation do not have a preemptive right to acquire the corporation's unissued shares except to the extent the articles of incorporation so provide.

(b) A statement included in the articles of incorporation that "the corporation elects to have preemptive rights" (or words of similar import) means that the following principles apply except to the extent the articles of incorporation expressly provide otherwise:

(1) The shareholders of the corporation have a preemptive right, granted on uniform terms and conditions prescribed by the board of directors to provide a fair and reasonable opportunity to exercise the right, to acquire proportional amounts of the corporation's unissued shares upon the decision of the board of directors to issue them.

(2) A shareholder may waive his preemptive right. A waiver evidenced by a writing is irrevocable even though it is not supported by consideration.

(3) There is no preemptive right with respect to:

(i) shares issued as compensation to directors, officers, agents, or employees of the corporation, its subsidiaries or affiliates:

(ii) shares issued to satisfy conversion or option rights created to provide compensation to directors, officers, agents, or employees of the corporation, its subsidiaries or affiliates;

(iii) shares authorized in articles of incorporation that are issued within six months from the effective date of incorporation;

(iv) shares sold otherwise than for money.

(4) Holders of shares of any class without general voting rights but with preferential rights to distributions or assets have no preemptive rights with respect to shares of any class.

(5) Holders of shares of any class with general voting rights but without preferential rights to distributions or assets have no preemptive rights with respect to shares of any class with preferential rights to distributions or assets unless the shares with preferential rights are convertible into or carry a right to subscribe for or acquire shares without preferential rights.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(6) Shares subject to preemptive rights that are not acquired by shareholders may be issued to any person for a period of one year after being offered to shareholders at a consideration set by the board of directors that is not lower than the consideration set for the exercise of preemptive rights. An offer at a lower consideration or after the expiration of one year is subject to the shareholders' preemptive rights.

(c) For purposes of this section, "shares" includes a security convertible into or carrying a right to subscribe for or acquire shares.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Consideration for shares, see § 6.21.

Debt securities, see § 3.02.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Distributions, see §§ 1.40 & 6.40.

Fractional shares, see § 6.04.

Share classes and series, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

Share options, see § 6.24.

§ 6.31. CORPORATION'S ACQUISITION OF ITS OWN SHARES

(a) A corporation may acquire its own shares, and shares so acquired constitute authorized but unissued shares.

(b) If the articles of incorporation prohibit the reissue of the acquired shares, the number of authorized shares is reduced by the number of shares acquired.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Acquisition as "distribution," see § 1.40.

Amendment of articles of incorporation by board, see § 10.05(6).

Annual report, see § 16.21.

"Deliver," see § 1.40.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Distributions generally, see § 6.40.

Effective time and date of amendment, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Issuance of shares, see § 6.21.

Liability for unlawful distributions, see § 8.31.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter D. DISTRIBUTIONS

§ 6.40. DISTRIBUTIONS TO SHAREHOLDERS

(a) A board of directors may authorize and the corporation may make distributions to its shareholders subject to restriction by the articles of incorporation and the limitation in subsection (c).

(b) If the board of directors does not fix the record date for determining shareholders entitled to a distribution (other than one involving a purchase, redemption, or other acquisition of the corporation's shares), it is the date the board of directors authorizes the distribution.

(c) No distribution may be made if, after giving it effect:

(1) the corporation would not be able to pay its debts as they become due in the usual course of business; or

(2) the corporation's total assets would be less than the sum of its total liabilities plus (unless the articles of incorporation permit otherwise) the amount that would be needed, if the corporation were to be dissolved at the time of the distribution, to satisfy the preferential rights upon dissolution of shareholders whose preferential rights are superior to those receiving the distribution.

(d) The board of directors may base a determination that a distribution is not prohibited under subsection (c) either on financial statements prepared on the basis of accounting practices and principles that are reasonable in the circumstances or on a fair valuation or other method that is reasonable in the circumstances.

(e) Except as provided in subsection (g), the effect of a distribution under subsection (c) is measured:

(1) in the case of distribution by purchase, redemption, or other acquisition of the corporation's shares, as of the earlier of (i) the date money or other property is transferred or debt incurred by the corporation or (ii) the date the shareholder ceases to be a shareholder with respect to the acquired shares;

(2) in the case of any other distribution of indebtedness, as of the date the indebtedness is distributed; and

(3) in all other cases, as of (i) the date the distribution is authorized if the payment occurs within 120 days after the date of authorization or (ii) the date the payment is made if it occurs more than 120 days after the date of authorization.

(f) A corporation's indebtedness to a shareholder incurred by reason of a distribution made in accordance with this section is at parity with the corporation's indebtedness to its general, unsecured creditors except to the extent subordinated by agreement.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(g) Indebtedness of a corporation, including indebtedness issued as a distribution, is not considered a liability for purposes of determinations under subsection (c) if its terms provide that payment of principal and interest are made only if and to the extent that payment of a distribution to shareholders could then be made under this section. If the indebtedness is issued as a distribution, each payment of principal or interest is treated as a distribution, the effect of which is measured on the date the payment is actually made.

(h) This section shall not apply to distributions in liquidation under chapter 14.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

“Distribution” defined, see § 1.40.

Liability for unlawful distributions, see § 8.33.

Record date, see § 7.07.

Redemption, see § 6.01 & 6.31.

Share dividends, see § 6.23.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 7 SHAREHOLDERS

Subchapter A. MEETINGS

- § 7.01. Annual meeting
- § 7.02. Special meeting
- § 7.03. Court-ordered meeting
- § 7.04. Action without meeting
- § 7.05. Notice of meeting
- § 7.06. Waiver of notice
- § 7.07. Record date
- § 7.08. Conduct of the meeting

Subchapter B. VOTING

- § 7.20. Shareholders' list for meeting
- § 7.21. Voting entitlement of shares
- § 7.22. Proxies
- § 7.23. Shares held by nominees
- § 7.24. Corporation's acceptance of votes
- § 7.25. Quorum and voting requirements for voting groups
- § 7.26. Action by single and multiple voting groups
- § 7.27. Greater quorum or voting requirements
- § 7.28. Voting for directors; cumulative voting
- § 7.29. Inspectors of election

Subchapter C. VOTING TRUSTS AND AGREEMENTS

- § 7.30. Voting trusts
- § 7.31. Voting agreements
- § 7.32. Shareholder agreements

Subchapter D. DERIVATIVE PROCEEDINGS

- § 7.40. Subchapter definitions
- § 7.41. Standing
- § 7.42. Demand
- § 7.43. Stay of proceedings
- § 7.44. Dismissal
- § 7.45. Discontinuance or settlement
- § 7.46. Payment of expenses
- § 7.47. Applicability to foreign corporations

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter A MEETINGS

§ 7.01 ANNUAL MEETING

- (a) A corporation shall hold a meeting of shareholders annually at a time stated in or fixed in accordance with the bylaws.
- (b) Annual shareholders' meetings may be held in or out of this state at the place stated in or fixed in accordance with the bylaws. If no place is stated in or fixed in accordance with the bylaws, annual meetings shall be held at the corporation's principal office.
- (c) The failure to hold an annual meeting at the time stated in or fixed in accordance with a corporation's bylaws does not affect the validity of any corporate action.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action without meeting, see § 7.04.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch.10B.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

Court-ordered meeting, see § 7.03.

Director holdover terms, see § 8.05.

Notice of meeting, see § 7.05.

"Principal office":

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Proxies, see § 7.22.

Quorum and voting requirements, see §§ 7.25-7.27.

Shareholders' list at meeting, see § 7.20.

Special meeting, see § 7.02.

Voting entitlement generally, see § 7.21.

"Voting group" defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.02. SPECIAL MEETING

(a) A corporation shall hold a special meeting of shareholders:

(1) on call of its board of directors or the person or persons authorized to do so by the articles of incorporation or bylaws; or

(2) if the holders of at least 10 percent of all the votes entitled to be cast on an issue proposed to be considered at the proposed special meeting sign, date, and deliver to the corporation one or more written demands for the meeting describing the purpose or purposes for which it is to be held, provided that the articles of incorporation may fix a lower percentage or a higher percentage not exceeding 25 percent of all the votes entitled to be cast on any issue proposed to be considered. Unless otherwise provided in the articles of incorporation, a written demand for a special meeting may be revoked by a writing to that effect received by the corporation prior to the receipt by the corporation of demands sufficient in number to require the holding of a special meeting.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) If not otherwise fixed under section 7.03 or 7.07, the record date for determining shareholders entitled to demand a special meeting is the date the first shareholder signs the demand.

(c) Special shareholders' meetings may be held in or out of this state at the place stated in or fixed in accordance with the bylaws. If no place is stated or fixed in accordance with the bylaws, special meetings shall be held at the corporation's principal office.

(d) Only business within the purpose or purposes described in the meeting notice required by section 7.05(c) may be conducted at a special shareholders' meeting.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action without meeting, see § 7.04.

Annual meeting, see § 7.01.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Court-ordered meeting, see § 7.03.

Notice of meeting, see § 7.05.

Objection to extraneous business, see § 7.06.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Quorum and voting requirements, see §§ 7.25-7.27.

Shareholders' list at meeting, see § 7.20.

Voting entitlement generally, see § 7.21.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

Waiver of notice, see § 7.06.

§ 7.03. COURT-ORDERED MEETING

(a) The [name or describe] court of the county where a corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is located may summarily order a meeting to be held:

(1) on application of any shareholder of the corporation entitled to participate in an annual meeting if an annual meeting was not held within the earlier of 6 months after the end of the corporation's fiscal year or 15 months after its last annual meeting; or

(2) on application of a shareholder who signed a demand for a special meeting valid under section 7.02, if:

(i) notice of the special meeting was not given within 30 days after the date the demand was delivered to the corporation's secretary; or

(ii) the special meeting was not held in accordance with the notice.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The court may fix the time and place of the meeting, determine the shares entitled to participate in the meeting, specify a record date for determining shareholders entitled to notice of and to vote at the meeting, prescribe the form and content of the meeting notice, fix the quorum required for specific matters to be considered at the meeting (or direct that the votes represented at the meeting constitute a quorum for action on those matters), and enter other orders necessary to accomplish the purpose or purposes of the meeting.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual meeting, see § 7.01.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

Notice of meeting, see § 7.05.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Quorum and voting requirements, see §§ 7.25-7.27.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

Shareholders’ list for voting at meeting, see § 7.20.

Voting entitlement generally, see § 7.21.

§ 7.04. ACTION WITHOUT MEETING

(a) Action required or permitted by this Act to be taken at a shareholders’ meeting may be taken without a meeting if the action is taken by all the shareholders entitled to vote on the action. The action must be evidenced by one or more written consents bearing the date of signature and describing the action taken, signed by all the shareholders entitled to vote on the action, and delivered to the corporation for inclusion in the minutes or filing with the corporate records.

(b) If not otherwise fixed under section 7.03 or 7.07, the record date for determining shareholders entitled to take action without a meeting is the date the first shareholder signs the consent under subsection (a). No written consent shall be effective to take the corporate action referred to therein unless, within 60 days of the earliest date appearing on a consent delivered to the corporation in the manner required by this section, written consents signed by all shareholders entitled to vote on the action are received by the corporation. A written consent may be revoked by a writing to that effect received by the corporation prior to receipt by the corporation of unrevoked written consents sufficient in number to take corporate action.

(c) A consent signed under this section has the effect of a meeting vote and may be described as such in any document.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) If this Act requires that notice of proposed action be given to nonvoting shareholders and the action is to be taken by unanimous consent of the voting shareholders, the corporation must give its nonvoting shareholders written notice of the proposed action at least 10 days before the action is taken. The notice must contain or be accompanied by the same material that, under this Act, would have been required to be sent to nonvoting shareholders in a notice of meeting at which the proposed action would have been submitted to the shareholders for action.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Acceptance of consents, see § 7.24.

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see ch. 10A.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Disposition of assets, see ch. 12.

Dissolution, see ch. 14.

Merger and share exchange, see ch. 11.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

“Sign,” see § 1.40.

Voting entitlement generally, see § 7.21.

§ 7.05. NOTICE OF MEETING

(a) A corporation shall notify shareholders of the date, time, and place of each annual and special shareholders’ meeting no fewer than 10 nor more than 60 days before the meeting date. Unless this Act or the articles of incorporation require otherwise, the corporation is required to give notice only to shareholders entitled to vote at the meeting.

(b) Unless this Act or the articles of incorporation require otherwise, notice of an annual meeting need not include a description of the purpose or purposes for which the meeting is called.

(c) Notice of a special meeting must include a description of the purpose or purposes for which the meeting is called.

(d) If not otherwise fixed under section 7.03 or 7.07, the record date for determining shareholders entitled to notice of and to vote at an annual or special shareholders’ meeting is the day before the first notice is delivered to shareholders.

(e) Unless the bylaws require otherwise, if an annual or special shareholders’ meeting is adjourned to a different date, time, or place, notice need not be given of the new date, time, or place if the new date, time, or place is announced at the meeting before adjournment. If a new record date for the adjourned meeting is or must be fixed under section 7.07, however, notice of the adjourned meeting must be given under this section to persons who are shareholders as of the new record date.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual meeting, see § 7.01.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice otherwise required:

 amendment, see § 10.03.

 directors’ conflicting interest transactions, approval by shareholders, see §§ 8.61(b) & 8.63.

 disposition of assets, see § 12.02.

 dissolution, see § 14.02.

 merger and share exchange, see § 11.04.

Special meeting, see § 7.02.

Waiver of notice, see § 7.06.

§ 7.06. WAIVER OF NOTICE

(a) A shareholder may waive any notice required by this Act, the articles of incorporation, or bylaws before or after the date and time stated in the notice. The waiver must be in writing, be signed by the shareholder entitled to the notice, and be delivered to the corporation for inclusion in the minutes or filing with the corporate records.

(b) A shareholder’s attendance at a meeting:

 (1) waives objection to lack of notice or defective notice of the meeting, unless the shareholder at the beginning of the meeting objects to holding the meeting or transacting business at the meeting;

 (2) waives objection to consideration of a particular matter at the meeting that is not within the purpose or purposes described in the meeting notice, unless the shareholder objects to considering the matter when it is presented.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Acceptance of waiver, see § 7.24.

Action without meeting, see § 7.04.

Meeting notice, see § 7.05.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Proxies, see § 7.22.

Waiver of quorum objection, see § 7.25.

§ 7.07. RECORD DATE

(a) The bylaws may fix or provide the manner of fixing the record date for one or more voting groups in order to determine the shareholders entitled to notice of a shareholders’ meeting, to demand a special meeting, to vote, or to take any other action. If the bylaws do not fix or provide for fixing a record date, the board of directors of the corporation may fix a future date as the record date.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) A record date fixed under this section may not be more than 70 days before the meeting or action requiring a determination of shareholders.

(c) A determination of shareholders entitled to notice of or to vote at a shareholders' meeting is effective for any adjournment of the meeting unless the board of directors fixes a new record date, which it must do if the meeting is adjourned to a date more than 120 days after the date fixed for the original meeting.

(d) If a court orders a meeting adjourned to a date more than 120 days after the date fixed for the original meeting, it may provide that the original record date continues in effect or it may fix a new record date.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual meeting, see § 7.01.

Bylaws, see § 2.06 & ch. 10B.

Court-ordered meeting, see § 7.03.

Other record date provisions:

 action without meeting, see § 7.04.

 distributions to shareholders, see § 6.40.

 notice of meeting, see § 7.05.

 special meeting, see § 7.02.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.08. CONDUCT OF THE MEETING

(a) At each meeting of shareholders, a chair shall preside. The chair shall be appointed as provided in the bylaws or, in the absence of such provision, by the board.

(b) The chair, unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws provide otherwise, shall determine the order of business and shall have the authority to establish rules for the conduct of the meeting.

(c) Any rules adopted for, and the conduct of, the meeting shall be fair to shareholders.

(d) The chair of the meeting shall announce at the meeting when the polls close for each matter voted upon. If no announcement is made, the polls shall be deemed to have closed upon the final adjournment of the meeting. After the polls close, no ballots, proxies or votes nor any revocations or changes thereto may be accepted.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual meeting, see § 7.01.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Bylaws, see § 2.06 & ch. 10B.

Court-ordered meeting, see § 7.03.

Proxies, see § 7.22.

Special meeting, see § 7.02.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter B. VOTING

§ 7.20. SHAREHOLDERS' LIST FOR MEETING

- (a) After fixing a record date for a meeting, a corporation shall prepare an alphabetical list of the names of all its shareholders who are entitled to notice of a shareholders' meeting. The list must be arranged by voting group (and within each voting group by class or series of shares) and show the address of and number of shares held by each shareholder.
- (b) The shareholders' list must be available for inspection by any shareholder, beginning two business days after notice of the meeting is given for which the list was prepared and continuing through the meeting, at the corporation's principal office or at a place identified in the meeting notice in the city where the meeting will be held. A shareholder, his agent, or attorney is entitled on written demand to inspect and, subject to the requirements of section 16.02(c), to copy the list, during regular business hours and at his expense, during the period it is available for inspection.
- (c) The corporation shall make the shareholders' list available at the meeting, and any shareholder, his agent, or attorney is entitled to inspect the list at any time during the meeting or any adjournment.
- (d) If the corporation refuses to allow a shareholder, his agent, or attorney to inspect the shareholders' list before or at the meeting (or copy the list as permitted by subsection (b)), the [name or describe] court of the county where a corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is located, on application of the shareholder, may summarily order the inspection or copying at the corporation's expense and may postpone the meeting for which the list was prepared until the inspection or copying is complete.
- (e) Refusal or failure to prepare or make available the shareholders' list does not affect the validity of action taken at the meeting.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Annual meeting, see § 7.01.
Charge for providing copy, see § 16.03.
Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.
Inspection of corporate records generally, see ch. 16A.
"Notice" defined, see § 1.41.
Notice of meeting, see § 7.05.
"Principal office":
 defined, see § 1.40.
 designated in annual report, see § 16.21.
Proper purpose for copying, see § 16.02.
Record date, see § 7.07.
Record of shareholders, see § 16.01.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

Special meeting, see § 7.02.

Voting entitlement generally, see § 7.21.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.21. VOTING ENTITLEMENT OF SHARES

(a) Except as provided in subsections (b) and (d) or unless the articles of incorporation provide otherwise, each outstanding share, regardless of class, is entitled to one vote on each matter voted on at a shareholders’ meeting. Only shares are entitled to vote.

(b) Absent special circumstances, the shares of a corporation are not entitled to vote if they are owned, directly or indirectly, by a second corporation, domestic or foreign, and the first corporation owns, directly or indirectly, a majority of the shares entitled to vote for directors of the second corporation.

(c) Subsection (b) does not limit the power of a corporation to vote any shares, including its own shares, held by it in a fiduciary capacity.

(d) Redeemable shares are not entitled to vote after notice of redemption is mailed to the holders and a sum sufficient to redeem the shares has been deposited with a bank, trust company, or other financial institution under an irrevocable obligation to pay the holders the redemption price on surrender of the shares.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Acceptance of votes, see § 7.24.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Business combinations, see § 11.03.

Cumulative voting, see § 7.28.

Director establishment of voting rights, see § 6.02.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Proxy voting, see § 7.22.

Redeemable shares, see § 6.01.

Series of shares, see § 6.02.

“Share” defined, see § 1.40.

Shareholders’ meetings, see §§ 7.01-7.03.

Voting by nominees, see § 7.23.

Voting by voting groups, see §§ 1.40, 7.25, 7.26.

Voting rights generally, see § 7.01.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 7.22. PROXIES

- (a) A shareholder may vote his shares in person or by proxy.
- (b) A shareholder or his agent or attorney-in-fact may appoint a proxy to vote or otherwise act for the shareholder by signing an appointment form, or by an electronic transmission. An electronic transmission must contain or be accompanied by information from which one can determine that the shareholder, the shareholder's agent, or the shareholder's attorney-in-fact authorized the transmission.
- (c) An appointment of a proxy is effective when a signed appointment form or an electronic transmission of the appointment is received by the inspector of election or the officer or agent of the corporation authorized to tabulate votes. An appointment is valid for 11 months unless a longer period is expressly provided in the appointment form.
- (d) An appointment of a proxy is revocable unless the appointment form or electronic transmission states that it is irrevocable and the appointment is coupled with an interest. Appointments coupled with an interest include the appointment of:
- (1) a pledgee;
 - (2) a person who purchased or agreed to purchase the shares;
 - (3) a creditor of the corporation who extended it credit under terms requiring the appointment;
 - (4) an employee of the corporation whose employment contract requires the appointment; or
 - (5) a party to a voting agreement created under section 7.31.
- (e) The death or incapacity of the shareholder appointing a proxy does not affect the right of the corporation to accept the proxy's authority unless notice of the death or incapacity is received by the secretary or other officer or agent authorized to tabulate votes before the proxy exercises his authority under the appointment.
- (f) An appointment made irrevocable under subsection (d) is revoked when the interest with which it is coupled is extinguished.
- (g) A transferee for value of shares subject to an irrevocable appointment may revoke the appointment if he did not know of its existence when he acquired the shares and the existence of the irrevocable appointment was not noted conspicuously on the certificate representing the shares or on the information statement for shares without certificates.
- (h) Subject to section 7.24 and to any express limitation on the proxy's authority stated in the appointment form or electronic transmission, a corporation is entitled to accept the proxy's vote or other action as that of the shareholder making the appointment.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Acceptance of proxy votes, see § 7.24.

Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.

"Conspicuously" defined, see § 1.40.

"Electronic transmission" defined, see § 1.40.

Information on share certificates, see § 6.25.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

“Transmitted electronically” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.23. SHARES HELD BY NOMINEES

(a) A corporation may establish a procedure by which the beneficial owner of shares that are registered in the name of a nominee is recognized by the corporation as the shareholder. The extent of this recognition may be determined in the procedure.

(b) The procedure may set forth:

- (1) the types of nominees to which it applies;
- (2) the rights or privileges that the corporation recognizes in a beneficial owner;
- (3) the manner in which the procedure is selected by the nominee;
- (4) the information that must be provided when the procedure is selected;
- (5) the period for which selection of the procedure is effective; and
- (6) other aspects of the rights and duties created.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.24. CORPORATION’S ACCEPTANCE OF VOTES

(a) If the name signed on a vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment corresponds to the name of a shareholder, the corporation if acting in good faith is entitled to accept the vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment and give it effect as the act of the shareholder.

(b) If the name signed on a vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment does not correspond to the name of its shareholder, the corporation if acting in good faith is nevertheless entitled to accept the vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment and give it effect as the act of the shareholder if:

(1) the shareholder is an entity and the name signed purports to be that of an officer or agent of the entity;

(2) the name signed purports to be that of an administrator, executor, guardian, or conservator representing the shareholder and, if the corporation requests, evidence of fiduciary status acceptable to the corporation has been presented with respect to the vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment;

(3) the name signed purports to be that of a receiver or trustee in bankruptcy of the shareholder and, if the corporation requests, evidence of this status acceptable to the corporation has been presented with respect to the vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment;

(4) the name signed purports to be that of a pledgee, beneficial owner, or attorney-in-fact of the shareholder and, if the corporation requests, evidence acceptable to the corporation of the signatory’s authority to sign for the shareholder has been presented with respect to the vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(5) two or more persons are the shareholder as co-tenants or fiduciaries and the name signed purports to be the name of at least one of the co-owners and the person signing appears to be acting on behalf of all the co-owners.

(c) The corporation is entitled to reject a vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment if the secretary or other officer or agent authorized to tabulate votes, acting in good faith, has reasonable basis for doubt about the validity of the signature on it or about the signatory's authority to sign for the shareholder.

(d) The corporation and its officer or agent who accepts or rejects a vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment in good faith and in accordance with the standards of this section or section 7.22(b) are not liable in damages to the shareholder for the consequences of the acceptance or rejection.

(e) Corporate action based on the acceptance or rejection of a vote, consent, waiver, or proxy appointment under this section is valid unless a court of competent jurisdiction determines otherwise.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Consents, see § 7.04.

“Entity” defined, see § 1.40.

Officers, see § 8.40.

Proxies, see § 7.22.

“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

“Sign,” see § 1.40.

Voting by nominees, see § 7.23.

Waiver of notice, see § 7.06.

§ 7.25. QUORUM AND VOTING REQUIREMENTS FOR VOTING GROUPS

(a) Shares entitled to vote as a separate voting group may take action on a matter at a meeting only if a quorum of those shares exists with respect to that matter. Unless the articles of incorporation or this Act provide otherwise, a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the matter by the voting group constitutes a quorum of that voting group for action on that matter.

(b) Once a share is represented for any purpose at a meeting, it is deemed present for quorum purposes for the remainder of the meeting and for any adjournment of that meeting unless a new record date is or must be set for that adjourned meeting.

(c) If a quorum exists, action on a matter (other than the election of directors) by a voting group is approved if the votes cast within the voting group favoring the action exceed the votes cast opposing the action, unless the articles of incorporation or this Act require a greater number of affirmative votes.

(d) An amendment of articles of incorporation adding, changing, or deleting a quorum or voting requirement for a voting group greater than specified in subsection (a) or (c) is governed by section 7.27.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(e) The election of directors is governed by section 7.28.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Adjourned meeting record date, see § 7.07.
Amendment of articles of incorporation, see § 10.03.
Amendment of bylaws, see ch. 10B.
Disposition of assets, see § 12.02.
Dissolution, see § 14.02.
Election of directors, see § 7.28.
Merger and share exchange, see § 11.04.
Multiple voting groups, see § 7.26.
Proxy voting, see § 7.22.
Record date, see § 7.07.
Supermajority requirements, see § 7.27.
“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.26. ACTION BY SINGLE AND MULTIPLE VOTING GROUPS

- (a) If the articles of incorporation or this Act provide for voting by a single voting group on a matter, action on that matter is taken when voted upon by that voting group as provided in section 7.25.
- (b) If the articles of incorporation or this act provide for voting by two or more voting groups on a matter, action on that matter is taken only when voted upon by each of those voting groups counted separately as provided in section 7.25. Action may be taken by one voting group on a matter even though no action is taken by another voting group entitled to vote on the matter.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see § 10.04.
Change of voting group requirements, see § 7.27.
Disposition of assets, see § 12.02.
Merger and share exchange, see § 11.04.
Number of votes per share, see § 7.21.
Quorum and voting requirements, see § 7.25.
Supermajority requirements, see § 7.27.
Voting by voting groups on amendments of articles of incorporation, see § 10.04.
“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.27. GREATER QUORUM OR VOTING REQUIREMENTS

- (a) The articles of incorporation may provide for a greater quorum or voting requirement for shareholders (or voting groups of shareholders) than is provided for by this Act.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) An amendment to the articles of incorporation that adds, changes, or deletes a greater quorum or voting requirement must meet the same quorum requirement and be adopted by the same vote and voting groups required to take action under the quorum and voting requirements then in effect or proposed to be adopted, whichever is greater.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see ch. 10A.

Quorum and voting requirements in general, see § 7.25.

Voting by voting group, see § 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.28. VOTING FOR DIRECTORS; CUMULATIVE VOTING

(a) Unless otherwise provided in the articles of incorporation, directors are elected by a plurality of the votes cast by the shares entitled to vote in the election at a meeting at which a quorum is present.

(b) Shareholders do not have a right to cumulate their votes for directors unless the articles of incorporation so provide.

(c) A statement included in the articles of incorporation that “[all] [a designated voting group of] shareholders are entitled to cumulate their votes for directors” (or words of similar import) means that the shareholders designated are entitled to multiply the number of votes they are entitled to cast by the number of directors for whom they are entitled to vote and cast the product for a single candidate or distribute the product among two or more candidates.

(d) Shares otherwise entitled to vote cumulatively may not be voted cumulatively at a particular meeting unless:

(1) the meeting notice or proxy statement accompanying the notice states conspicuously that cumulative voting is authorized; or

(2) a shareholder who has the right to cumulate his votes gives notice to the corporation not less than 48 hours before the time set for the meeting of his intent to cumulate his votes during the meeting, and if one shareholder gives this notice all other shareholders in the same voting group participating in the election are entitled to cumulate their votes without giving further notice.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation:

amendment, see ch. 10A.

content, see § 2.02.

“Conspicuously” defined, see § 1.40.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Notice of meeting, see § 7.05.

“Notice” to the corporation, see § 1.41.

Proxies, see § 7.22.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Quorum of shareholders, see § 7.25.
Voting for directors by voting group, see § 8.04.
“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 7.29. INSPECTORS OF ELECTION

(a) A corporation having any shares listed on a national securities exchange or regularly traded in a market maintained by one or more members of a national or affiliated securities association shall, and any other corporation may, appoint one or more inspectors to act at a meeting of shareholders and make a written report of the inspectors’ determinations. Each inspector shall take and sign an oath faithfully to execute the duties of inspector with strict impartiality and according to the best of the inspector’s ability.

(b) The inspectors shall

- (1) ascertain the number of shares outstanding and the voting power of each;
- (2) determine the shares represented at a meeting;
- (3) determine the validity of proxies and ballots;
- (4) count all votes; and
- (5) determine the result.

(c) An inspector may be an officer or employee of the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Officers of the corporation, see § 8.40.
Proxies, see § 7.22.

Subchapter C.

VOTING TRUSTS AND AGREEMENTS

§ 7.30. VOTING TRUSTS

(a) One or more shareholders may create a voting trust, conferring on a trustee the right to vote or otherwise act for them, by signing an agreement setting out the provisions of the trust (which may include anything consistent with its purpose) and transferring their shares to the trustee. When a voting trust agreement is signed, the trustee shall prepare a list of the names and addresses of all owners of beneficial interests in the trust, together with the number and class of shares each transferred to the trust, and deliver copies of the list and agreement to the corporation’s principal office.

(b) A voting trust becomes effective on the date the first shares subject to the trust are registered in the trustee’s name. A voting trust is valid for not more than 10 years after its effective date unless extended under subsection (c).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) All or some of the parties to a voting trust may extend it for additional terms of not more than 10 years each by signing written consent to the extension. An extension is valid for 10 years from the date the first shareholder signs the extension agreement. The voting trustee must deliver copies of the extension agreement and list of beneficial owners to the corporation's principal office. An extension agreement binds only those parties signing it.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Delivery to corporation, see § 1.41.

Inspection of shareholder lists, see § 7.20, ch. 16A.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

Shares held by nominees, see § 7.23.

“Sign,” see § 1.40.

Voting agreements, see § 7.31.

§ 7.31. VOTING AGREEMENTS

(a) Two or more shareholders may provide for the manner in which they will vote their shares by signing an agreement for that purpose. A voting agreement created under this section is not subject to the provisions of section 7.30.

(b) A voting agreement created under this section is specifically enforceable.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Irrevocable proxies, see § 7.22.

Voting trust, see § 7.30.

§ 7.32. SHAREHOLDER AGREEMENTS

(a) An agreement among the shareholders of a corporation that complies with this section is effective among the shareholders and the corporation even though it is inconsistent with one or more other provisions of this Act in that it:

(1) eliminates the board of directors or restricts the discretion or powers of the board of directors;

(2) governs the authorization or making of distributions whether or not in proportion to ownership of shares, subject to the limitations in section 6.40;

(3) establishes who shall be directors or officers of the corporation, or their terms of office or manner of selection or removal;

(4) governs, in general or in regard to specific matters, the exercise or division of voting power by or between the shareholders and directors or by or among any of them, including use of weighted voting rights or director proxies;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(5) establishes the terms and conditions of any agreement for the transfer or use of property or the provision of services between the corporation and any shareholder, director, officer or employee of the corporation or among any of them;

(6) transfers to one or more shareholders or other persons all or part of the authority to exercise the corporate powers or to manage the business and affairs of the corporation, including the resolution of any issue about which there exists a deadlock among directors or shareholders;

(7) requires dissolution of the corporation at the request of one or more of the shareholders or upon the occurrence of a specified event or contingency; or

(8) otherwise governs the exercise of the corporate powers or the management of the business and affairs of the corporation or the relationship among the shareholders, the directors and the corporation, or among any of them, and is not contrary to public policy.

(b) An agreement authorized by this section shall be:

(1) set forth (A) in the articles of incorporation or bylaws and approved by all persons who are shareholders at the time of the agreement or (B) in a written agreement that is signed by all persons who are shareholders at the time of the agreement and is made known to the corporation;

(2) subject to amendment only by all persons who are shareholders at the time of the amendment, unless the agreement provides otherwise; and

(3) valid for 10 years, unless the agreement provides otherwise.

(c) The existence of an agreement authorized by this section shall be noted conspicuously on the front or back of each certificate for outstanding shares or on the information statement required by section 6.26(b). If at the time of the agreement the corporation has shares outstanding represented by certificates, the corporation shall recall the outstanding certificates and issue substitute certificates that comply with this subsection. The failure to note the existence of the agreement on the certificate or information statement shall not affect the validity of the agreement or any action taken pursuant to it. Any purchaser of shares who, at the time of purchase, did not have knowledge of the existence of the agreement shall be entitled to rescission of the purchase. A purchaser shall be deemed to have knowledge of the existence of the agreement if its existence is noted on the certificate or information statement for the shares in compliance with this subsection and, if the shares are not represented by a certificate, the information statement is delivered to the purchaser at or prior to the time of purchase of the shares. An action to enforce the right of rescission authorized by this subsection must be commenced within the earlier of 90 days after discovery of the existence of the agreement or two years after the time of purchase of the shares.

(d) An agreement authorized by this section shall cease to be effective when shares of the corporation are listed on a national securities exchange or regularly traded in a market maintained by one or more members of a national or affiliated securities association. If the agreement ceases to be effective for any reason, the board of directors may, if the agreement is contained or referred to in the corporation's articles of incorporation or bylaws, adopt an amendment to the articles of incorporation or bylaws, without shareholder action, to delete the agreement and any references to it.

(e) An agreement authorized by this section that limits the discretion or powers of the board of directors shall relieve the directors of, and impose upon the person or persons in whom such discretion or powers are vested, liability for acts or omissions imposed by law on directors to the extent that the discretion or powers of the directors are limited by the agreement.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(f) The existence or performance of an agreement authorized by this section shall not be a ground for imposing personal liability on any shareholder for the acts or debts of the corporation even if the agreement or its performance treats the corporation as if it were a partnership or results in failure to observe the corporate formalities otherwise applicable to the matters governed by the agreement.

(g) Incorporators or subscribers for shares may act as shareholders with respect to an agreement authorized by this section if no shares have been issued when the agreement is made.

Subchapter D. DERIVATIVE PROCEEDINGS

§ 7.40. SUBCHAPTER DEFINITIONS

In this subchapter:

(1) “Derivative proceeding” means a civil suit in the right of a domestic corporation or, to the extent provided in section 7.47, in the right of a foreign corporation.

(2) “Shareholder” includes a beneficial owner whose shares are held in a voting trust or held by a nominee on the beneficial owner’s behalf.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Shares held by nominees, see § 7.23.

Voting trusts, see § 7.30.

§ 7.41. STANDING

A shareholder may not commence or maintain a derivative proceeding unless the shareholder:

(1) was a shareholder of the corporation at the time of the act or omission complained of or became a shareholder through transfer by operation of law from one who was a shareholder at that time; and

(2) fairly and adequately represents the interests of the corporation in enforcing the right of the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Derivative proceeding” defined, see § 7.40.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 7.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 7.42. DEMAND

No shareholder may commence a derivative proceeding until:

- (1) a written demand has been made upon the corporation to take suitable action; and
- (2) 90 days have expired from the date the demand was made unless the shareholder has earlier been notified that the demand has been rejected by the corporation or unless irreparable injury to the corporation would result by waiting for the expiration of the 90-day period.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Derivative proceeding” defined, see § 7.40.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 7.40.

§ 7.43. STAY OF PROCEEDINGS

If the corporation commences an inquiry into the allegations made in the demand or complaint, the court may stay any derivative proceeding for such period as the court deems appropriate.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Demand, see § 7.41.

“Derivative proceeding” defined, see § 7.40.

§ 7.44. DISMISSAL

(a) A derivative proceeding shall be dismissed by the court on motion by the corporation if one of the groups specified in subsections (b) or (f) has determined in good faith after conducting a reasonable inquiry upon which its conclusions are based that the maintenance of the derivative proceeding is not in the best interests of the corporation.

(b) Unless a panel is appointed pursuant to subsection (f), the determination in subsection (a) shall be made by:

- (1) a majority vote of independent directors present at a meeting of the board of directors if the independent directors constitute a quorum; or
- (2) a majority vote of a committee consisting of two or more independent directors appointed by majority vote of independent directors present at a meeting of the board of directors, whether or not such independent directors constituted a quorum.

(c) None of the following shall by itself cause a director to be considered not independent for purposes of this section:

- (1) the nomination or election of the director by persons who are defendants in the derivative proceeding or against whom action is demanded;
- (2) the naming of the director as a defendant in the derivative proceeding or as a person against whom action is demanded; or
- (3) the approval by the director of the act being challenged in the derivative proceeding or demand if the act resulted in no personal benefit to the director.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) If a derivative proceeding is commenced after a determination has been made rejecting a demand by a shareholder, the complaint shall allege with particularity facts establishing either (1) that a majority of the board of directors did not consist of independent directors at the time the determination was made or (2) that the requirements of subsection (a) have not been met.

(e) If a majority of the board of directors does not consist of independent directors at the time the determination is made, the corporation shall have the burden of proving that the requirements of subsection (a) have been met. If a majority of the board of directors consists of independent directors at the time the determination is made, the plaintiff shall have the burden of proving that the requirements of subsection (a) have not been met.

(f) The court may appoint a panel of one or more independent persons upon motion by the corporation to make a determination whether the maintenance of the derivative proceeding is in the best interests of the corporation. In such case, the plaintiff shall have the burden of proving that the requirements of subsection (a) have not been met.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Board of directors:

committees, see § 8.25.

meetings, see § 8.20.

quorum and voting, see § 8.24.

Demand, see § 7.41.

“Derivative proceeding” defined, see § 7.40.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 7.40.

§ 7.45. DISCONTINUANCE OR SETTLEMENT

A derivative proceeding may not be discontinued or settled without the court’s approval. If the court determines that a proposed discontinuance or settlement will substantially affect the interests of the corporation’s shareholders or a class of shareholders, the court shall direct that notice be given to the shareholders affected.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Derivative proceeding” defined, see § 7.40.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 7.40.

§ 7.46. PAYMENT OF EXPENSES

On termination of the derivative proceeding the court may:

(1) order the corporation to pay the plaintiff’s reasonable expenses (including counsel fees) incurred in the proceeding if it finds that the proceeding has resulted in a substantial benefit to the corporation;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(2) order the plaintiff to pay any defendant's reasonable expenses (including counsel fees) incurred in defending the proceeding if it finds that the proceeding was commenced or maintained without reasonable cause or for an improper purpose; or

(3) order a party to pay an opposing party's reasonable expenses (including counsel fees) incurred because of the filing of a pleading, motion or other paper, if it finds that the pleading, motion or other paper was not well grounded in fact, after reasonable inquiry, or warranted by existing law or a good faith argument for the extension, modification or reversal of existing law and was interposed for an improper purpose, such as to harass or cause unnecessary delay or needless increase in the cost of litigation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

"Derivative proceeding" defined, see § 7.40.

§ 7.47. APPLICABILITY TO FOREIGN CORPORATIONS

In any derivative proceeding in the right of a foreign corporation, the matters covered by this subchapter shall be governed by the laws of the jurisdiction of incorporation of the foreign corporation except for sections 7.43, 7.45, and 7.46.

CROSS-REFERENCES

"Derivative proceeding" defined, see § 7.40.

Foreign corporations, generally, see §§ 15.01-15.32.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 8 DIRECTORS AND OFFICERS

Subchapter A. BOARD OF DIRECTORS

- § 8.01. Requirement for and duties of board of directors
- § 8.02. Qualifications of directors
- § 8.03. Number and election of directors
- § 8.04. Election of directors by certain classes of shareholders
- § 8.05. Terms of directors generally
- § 8.06. Staggered terms for directors
- § 8.07. Resignation of directors
- § 8.08. Removal of directors by shareholders
- § 8.09. Removal of directors by judicial proceeding
- § 8.10. Vacancy on board
- § 8.11. Compensation of directors

Subchapter B. MEETINGS AND ACTION OF THE BOARD

- § 8.20. Meetings
- § 8.21. Action without meeting
- § 8.22. Notice of meeting
- § 8.23. Waiver of notice
- § 8.24. Quorum and voting
- § 8.25. Committees

Subchapter C. DIRECTORS

- § 8.30. Standards of conduct for directors
- § 8.31. Standards of liability for directors
- § 8.32. (Reserved)
- § 8.33. Directors' liability for unlawful distributions

Subchapter D. OFFICERS

- § 8.40. Officers
- § 8.41. Duties of officers
- § 8.42. Standards of conduct for officers
- § 8.43. Resignation and removal of officers
- § 8.44. Contract rights of officers

Subchapter E. INDEMNIFICATION AND ADVANCE FOR EXPENSES

- § 8.50. Subchapter definitions
- § 8.51. Permissible indemnification
- § 8.52. Mandatory indemnification
- § 8.53. Advance for expenses
- § 8.54. Court-ordered indemnification and advance for expenses
- § 8.55. Determination and authorization of indemnification
- § 8.56. Indemnification of officers

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.57. Insurance

§ 8.58. Variation by corporate action; application of subchapter

§ 8.59. Exclusivity of subchapter

Subchapter F. DIRECTORS' CONFLICTING INTEREST TRANSACTIONS

§ 8.60. Subchapter definitions

§ 8.61. Judicial action

§ 8.62. Directors' action

§ 8.63. Shareholders' action

Subchapter A.

BOARD OF DIRECTORS

§ 8.01. REQUIREMENT FOR AND DUTIES OF BOARD OF DIRECTORS

(a) Except as provided in section 7.32, each corporation must have a board of directors.

(b) All corporate powers shall be exercised by or under the authority of, and the business and affairs of the corporation managed by or under the direction of, its board of directors, subject to any limitation set forth in the articles of incorporation or in an agreement authorized under section 7.32.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see ch. 10A.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Corporation Supplement.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Indemnification, see §§ 8.50-8.59.

Number of shareholders, see § 1.42.

Officers, see §§ 8.40 & 8.41.

§ 8.02. QUALIFICATIONS OF DIRECTORS

The articles of incorporation or bylaws may prescribe qualifications for directors. A director need not be a resident of this state or a shareholder of the corporation unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws so prescribe.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.03. NUMBER AND ELECTION OF DIRECTORS

(a) A board of directors must consist of one or more individuals, with the number specified in or fixed in accordance with the articles of incorporation or bylaws.

(b) The number of directors may be increased or decreased from time to time by amendment to, or in the manner provided in, the articles of incorporation or the bylaws.

(c) Directors are elected at the first annual shareholders' meeting and at each annual meeting thereafter unless their terms are staggered under section 8.06.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual shareholders' meeting, see § 7.01.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Classification of board of directors, see § 8.06.

Cumulative voting, see § 7.28.

Deadlocked board of directors as ground for dissolution, see § 14.30.

Election of directors, see § 7.28.

Staggered terms, see § 8.06.

Terms generally, see § 8.04.

§ 8.04. ELECTION OF DIRECTORS BY CERTAIN CLASSES OF SHAREHOLDERS

If the articles of incorporation authorize dividing the shares into classes, the articles may also authorize the election of all or a specified number of directors by the holders of one or more authorized classes of shares. A class (or classes) of shares entitled to elect one or more directors is a separate voting group for purposes of the election of directors.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Classes of shares, see § 6.01.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

Cumulative voting, see § 7.28.

Election of directors generally, see § 7.28.

Removal of directors, see §§ 8.08 & 8.09.

Voting by voting groups:

 quorum and voting requirements for election of directors, see § 7.28.

 quorum and voting requirements generally, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.05. TERMS OF DIRECTORS GENERALLY

- (a) The terms of the initial directors of a corporation expire at the first shareholders' meeting at which directors are elected.
- (b) The terms of all other directors expire at the next annual shareholders' meeting following their election unless their terms are staggered under section 8.06.
- (c) A decrease in the number of directors does not shorten an incumbent director's term.
- (d) The term of a director elected to fill a vacancy expires at the next shareholders' meeting at which directors are elected.
- (e) Despite the expiration of a director's term, he continues to serve until his successor is elected and qualifies or until there is a decrease in the number of directors.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual shareholders' meeting, see § 7.01.
Court-ordered shareholders' meeting, see § 7.03.
Removal, see §§ 8.08 & 8.09.
Resignation, see § 8.07.
Size of board, see § 8.03.
Staggered terms, see § 8.06.
Vacancies, see § 8.10.

§ 8.06. STAGGERED TERMS FOR DIRECTORS

The articles of incorporation may provide for staggering the terms of directors by dividing the total number of directors into two or three groups, with each group containing one-half or one-third of the total, as near as may be. In that event, the terms of directors in the first group expire at the first annual shareholders' meeting after their election, the terms of the second group expire at the second annual shareholders' meeting after their election, and the terms of the third group, if any, expire at the third annual shareholders' meeting after their election. At each annual shareholders' meeting held thereafter, directors shall be chosen for a term of two years or three years, as the case may be, to succeed those whose terms expire.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual shareholders' meeting, see § 7.01.
Cumulative voting, see § 7.28.
Election of directors generally, see § 7.28.
Number of directors, see § 8.03.
Removal, see §§ 8.08 & 8.09.
Resignation, see § 8.07.
Terms of directors generally, see § 8.05.
Vacancies, see § 8.10.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.07. RESIGNATION OF DIRECTORS

- (a) A director may resign at any time by delivering written notice to the board of directors, its chairman, or to the corporation.
- (b) A resignation is effective when the notice is delivered unless the notice specifies a later effective date.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- “Deliver,” see § 1.40.
- Delivery to corporation, see § 1.40.
- “Notice” defined, see § 1.41.
- “Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.
- Vacancies, see § 8.10.

§ 8.08. REMOVAL OF DIRECTORS BY SHAREHOLDERS

- (a) The shareholders may remove one or more directors with or without cause unless the articles of incorporation provide that directors may be removed only for cause.
- (b) If a director is elected by a voting group of shareholders, only the shareholders of that voting group may participate in the vote to remove him.
- (c) If cumulative voting is authorized, a director may not be removed if the number of votes sufficient to elect him under cumulative voting is voted against his removal. If cumulative voting is not authorized, a director may be removed only if the number of votes cast to remove him exceeds the number of votes cast not to remove him.
- (d) A director may be removed by the shareholders only at a meeting called for the purpose of removing him and the meeting notice must state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is removal of the director.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.
- Court-ordered removal, see § 8.09.
- Cumulative voting, see § 7.28.
- Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.
- Election by voting group of shareholders, see § 8.04.
- Election of directors generally, see § 7.28.
- Meeting notice, see § 7.05.
- Quorum for voting group, see § 7.25.
- Shareholders’ meetings, see §§ 7.01-7.03.
- “Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.09. REMOVAL OF DIRECTORS BY JUDICIAL PROCEEDING

(a) The [name or describe] court of the county where a corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is located may remove a director of the corporation from office in a proceeding commenced by or in the right of the corporation if the court finds that (1) the director engaged in fraudulent conduct with respect to the corporation or its shareholders, grossly abused the position of director, or intentionally inflicted harm on the corporation; and (2) considering the director's course of conduct and the inadequacy of other available remedies, removal would be in the best interest of the corporation.

(b) A shareholder proceeding on behalf of the corporation under subsection (a) shall comply with all of the requirements of sub-chapter 7D, except section 7.41(1).

(c) The court, in addition to removing the director, may bar the director from reelection for a period prescribed by the court.

(d) Nothing in this section limits the equitable powers of the court to order other relief.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Derivative proceedings, see § 7.40.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

Removal by shareholders, see § 8.08.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 8.10. VACANCY ON BOARD

(a) Unless the articles of incorporation provide otherwise, if a vacancy occurs on a board of directors, including a vacancy resulting from an increase in the number of directors:

(1) the shareholders may fill the vacancy;

(2) the board of directors may fill the vacancy; or

(3) if the directors remaining in office constitute fewer than a quorum of the board, they may fill the vacancy by the affirmative vote of a majority of all the directors remaining in office.

(b) If the vacant office was held by a director elected by a voting group of shareholders, only the holders of shares of that voting group are entitled to vote to fill the vacancy if it is filled by the shareholders.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) A vacancy that will occur at a specific later date (by reason of a resignation effective at a later date under section 8.07(b) or otherwise) may be filled before the vacancy occurs but the new director may not take office until the vacancy occurs.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Election by voting group of shareholders, see § 8.04.

Number of directors, see § 8.03.

Quorum and voting of directors, see § 8.24.

Removal of directors, see §§ 8.08 & 8.09.

Resignation of directors, see § 8.07.

Shareholders' meetings, see §§ 7.01-7.03.

Terms of directors generally, see § 8.05.

Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 8.11. COMPENSATION OF DIRECTORS

Unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws provide otherwise, the board of directors may fix the compensation of directors.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Committees of board of directors, see § 8.25.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Subchapter B.

MEETINGS AND ACTION OF THE BOARD

§ 8.20. MEETINGS

(a) The board of directors may hold regular or special meetings in or out of this state.

(b) Unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws provide otherwise, the board of directors may permit any or all directors to participate in a regular or special meeting by, or conduct the meeting through the use of, any means of communication by which all directors participating may simultaneously hear each other during the meeting. A director participating in a meeting by this means is deemed to be present in person at the meeting.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action without meeting, see § 8.21.
Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.
Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.
Notice of meeting, see § 8.22.
Quorum and voting, see § 8.24.
Waiver of meeting notice, see § 8.23.

§ 8.21. ACTION WITHOUT MEETING

(a) Except to the extent that the articles of incorporation or bylaws require that action by the board of directors be taken at a meeting, action required or permitted by this Act to be taken by the board of directors may be taken without a meeting if each director signs a consent describing the action to be taken and delivers it to the corporation.

(b) Action taken under this section is the act of the board of directors when one or more consents signed by all the directors are delivered to the corporation. The consent may specify the time at which the action taken thereunder is to be effective. A director's consent may be withdrawn by a revocation signed by the director and delivered to the corporation prior to delivery to the corporation of unrevoked written consents signed by all the directors.

(c) A consent signed under this section has the effect of action taken at a meeting of the board of directors and may be described as such in any document.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.
Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.
“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.
Notice of meeting, see § 8.22.
Waiver of meeting notice, see § 8.23.

§ 8.22. NOTICE OF MEETING

(a) Unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws provide otherwise, regular meetings of the board of directors may be held without notice of the date, time, place, or purpose of the meeting.

(b) Unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws provide for a longer or shorter period, special meetings of the board of directors must be preceded by at least two days' notice of the date, time, and place of the meeting. The notice need not describe the purpose of the special meeting unless required by the articles of incorporation or bylaws.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action without meeting, see § 8.21.
Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.
Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.
Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.
Meetings of board of directors, see §§ 8.20 & 8.21.
“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.
Waiver of notice, see § 8.23.

§ 8.23. WAIVER OF NOTICE

(a) A director may waive any notice required by this Act, the articles of incorporation, or bylaws before or after the date and time stated in the notice. Except as provided by subsection (b), the waiver must be in writing, signed by the director entitled to the notice, and filed with the minutes or corporate records.

(b) A director’s attendance at or participation in a meeting waives any required notice to him of the meeting unless the director at the beginning of the meeting (or promptly upon his arrival) objects to holding the meeting or transacting business at the meeting and does not thereafter vote for or assent to action taken at the meeting.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action without meeting, see § 8.21.
Meetings of board of directors, see § 8.20.
“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.
Notice of meeting, see § 8.22.
“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 8.24. QUORUM AND VOTING

(a) Unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws require a greater number or unless otherwise specifically provided in this Act, a quorum of a board of directors consists of:

- (1) a majority of the fixed number of directors if the corporation has a fixed board size; or
- (2) a majority of the number of directors prescribed, or if no number is prescribed the number in office immediately before the meeting begins, if the corporation has a variable-range size board.

(b) The articles of incorporation or bylaws may authorize a quorum of a board of directors to consist of no fewer than one-third of the fixed or prescribed number of directors determined under subsection (a).

(c) If a quorum is present when a vote is taken, the affirmative vote of a majority of directors present is the act of the board of directors unless the articles of incorporation or bylaws require the vote of a greater number of directors.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) A director who is present at a meeting of the board of directors or a committee of the board of directors when corporate action is taken is deemed to have assented to the action taken unless: (1) he objects at the beginning of the meeting (or promptly upon his arrival) to holding it or transacting business at the meeting; (2) his dissent or abstention from the action taken is entered in the minutes of the meeting; or (3) he delivers written notice of his dissent or abstention to the presiding officer of the meeting before its adjournment or to the corporation immediately after adjournment of the meeting. The right of dissent or abstention is not available to a director who votes in favor of the action taken.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action without meeting, see § 8.21.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Committees of board of directors, see § 8.25.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Meetings of board of directors, see § 8.20.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Number of directors, see § 8.03.

Quorum for determination of advance for expenses, see § 8.53(c).

Quorum for determination and authorization of indemnification, see § 8.55(b).

“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 8.25. COMMITTEES

(a) Unless this Act, the articles of incorporation or the bylaws provide otherwise, a board of directors may create one or more committees and appoint one or more members of the board of directors to serve on any such committee.

(b) Unless this Act otherwise provides, the creation of a committee and appointment of members to it must be approved by the greater of (1) a majority of all the directors in office when the action is taken or (2) the number of directors required by the articles of incorporation or bylaws to take action under section 8.24.

(c) Sections 8.20 through 8.24 apply both to committees of the board and to their members.

(d) To the extent specified by the board of directors or in the articles of incorporation or bylaws, each committee may exercise the powers of the board of directors under section 8.01.

(e) A committee may not, however:

(1) authorize or approve distributions, except according to a formula or method, or within limits, prescribed by the board of directors;

(2) approve or propose to shareholders action that this Act requires be approved by shareholders;

(3) fill vacancies on the board of directors or, subject to subsection (g), on any of its committees; or

(4) adopt, amend, or repeal bylaws.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(f) The creation of, delegation of authority to, or action by a committee does not alone constitute compliance by a director with the standards of conduct described in section 8.30.

(g) The board of directors may appoint one or more directors as alternate members of any committee to replace any absent or disqualified member during the member's absence or disqualification. Unless the articles of incorporation or the bylaws or the resolution creating the committee provide otherwise, in the event of the absence or disqualification of a member of a committee, the member or members present at any meeting and not disqualified from voting, unanimously, may appoint another director to act in place of the absent or disqualified member.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Derivative proceedings, see §§ 7.40-7.47.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Dissolution, see ch. 14.

Distributions, see § 6.40.

Duties of board of directors, see § 8.01.

Indemnification determination, see § 8.55.

Issuance of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

Mergers, see ch. 11.

Quorum and voting, see § 8.24.

Reacquisition of shares, see §§ 6.03 & 6.31.

Vacancies on board, see § 8.10.

Subchapter C.

DIRECTORS

§ 8.30. STANDARDS OF CONDUCT FOR DIRECTORS

(a) Each member of the board of directors, when discharging the duties of a director, shall act: (1) in good faith, and (2) in a manner the director reasonably believes to be in the best interests of the corporation.

(b) The members of the board of directors or a committee of the board, when becoming informed in connection with their decision-making function or devoting attention to their oversight function, shall discharge their duties with the care that a person in a like position would reasonably believe appropriate under similar circumstances.

(c) In discharging board or committee duties a director, who does not have knowledge that makes reliance unwarranted, is entitled to rely on the performance by any of the persons specified in subsection (e)(1) or subsection (e)(3) to whom the board may have delegated, formally or informally by course of conduct, the authority or duty to perform one or more of the board's functions that are delegable under applicable law.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) In discharging board or committee duties a director, who does not have knowledge that makes reliance unwarranted, is entitled to rely on information, opinions, reports or statements, including financial statements and other financial data, prepared or presented by any of the persons specified in subsection (e).

(e) A director is entitled to rely, in accordance with subsection (c) or (d), on:

(1) one or more officers or employees of the corporation whom the director reasonably believes to be reliable and competent in the functions performed or the information, opinions, reports or statements provided;

(2) legal counsel, public accountants, or other persons retained by the corporation as to matters involving skills or expertise the director reasonably believes are matters (i) within the particular person's professional or expert competence or (ii) as to which the particular person merits confidence; or

(3) a committee of the board of directors of which the director is not a member if the director reasonably believes the committee merits confidence.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Committees of board of directors, see § 8.25.

Conflict of interest, see ch. 8F.

Derivative proceedings, see §§ 7.40-7.47.

Duty of board of directors, see § 8.01.

Indemnification, see §§ 8.50-8.59.

Meetings of board of directors, see §§ 8.20 & 8.21.

Officer standards of conduct, see § 8.42.

Officers, see §§ 8.40 & 8.41.

Quorum of directors, see § 8.24.

Removal of directors, see §§ 8.08 & 8.09.

Standards of liability for directors, see § 8.31.

Unlawful distributions, see § 8.33.

§ 8.31 STANDARDS OF LIABILITY FOR DIRECTORS

(a) A director shall not be liable to the corporation or its shareholders for any decision to take or not to take action, or any failure to take any action, as a director, unless the party asserting liability in a proceeding establishes that:

(1) any provision in the articles of incorporation authorized by section 2.02(b)(4) or the protection afforded by section 8.61 for action taken in compliance with section 8.62 or 8.63, if interposed as a bar to the proceeding by the director, does not preclude liability; and

(2) the challenged conduct consisted or was the result of:

(i) action not in good faith; or

(ii) a decision

(A) which the director did not reasonably believe to be in the best interests of the corporation, or

(B) as to which the director was not informed to an extent the director reasonably believed appropriate in the circumstances; or

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(iii) a lack of objectivity due to the director's familial, financial or business relationship with, or a lack of independence due to the director's domination or control by, another person having a material interest in the challenged conduct

(A) which relationship or which domination or control could reasonably be expected to have affected the director's judgment respecting the challenged conduct in a manner adverse to the corporation, and

(B) after a reasonable expectation to such effect has been established, the director shall not have established that the challenged conduct was reasonably believed by the director to be in the best interests of the corporation; or

(iv) a sustained failure of the director to devote attention to ongoing oversight of the business and affairs of the corporation, or a failure to devote timely attention, by making (or causing to be made) appropriate inquiry, when particular facts and circumstances of significant concern materialize that would alert a reasonably attentive director to the need therefore; or

(v) receipt of a financial benefit to which the director was not entitled or any other breach of the director's duties to deal fairly with the corporation and its shareholders that is actionable under applicable law.

(b) The party seeking to hold the director liable:

(1) for money damages, shall also have the burden of establishing that:

(i) harm to the corporation or its shareholders has been suffered, and

(ii) the harm suffered was proximately caused by the director's challenged conduct; or

(2) for other money payment under a legal remedy, such as compensation for the unauthorized use of corporate assets, shall also have whatever persuasion burden may be called for to establish that the payment sought is appropriate in the circumstances; or

(3) for other money payment under an equitable remedy, such as profit recovery by or disgorgement to the corporation, shall also have whatever persuasion burden may be called for to establish that the equitable remedy sought is appropriate in the circumstances.

(c) Nothing contained in this section shall (1) in any instance where fairness is at issue, such as consideration of the fairness of a transaction to the corporation under section 8.61(b)(3), alter the burden of proving the fact or lack of fairness otherwise applicable, (2) alter the fact or lack of liability of a director under another section of this Act, such as the provisions governing the consequences of an unlawful distribution under section 8.33 or a transactional interest under section 8.61, or (3) affect any rights to which the corporation or a shareholder may be entitled under another statute of this state or the United States.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Article provision limiting or eliminating director liability, see § 2.02(b)(4).

Article provision permitting expanded indemnification, see § 2.02(b)(5).

Derivative proceedings, see §§ 7.40-7.47.

Director's conflicting interest transaction, see ch. 8F.

Duty of board of directors, see § 8.01.

Indemnification, see §§ 8.50-8.59.

Judicial removal of directors, see § 8.09.

Standards of conduct for directors, see § 8.1.

Unlawful distributions, see § 8.33.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.32. [RESERVED]

§ 8.33. DIRECTORS' LIABILITY FOR UNLAWFUL DISTRIBUTIONS

(a) A director who votes for or assents to a distribution in excess of what may be authorized and made pursuant to section 6.40(a) or 14.09(a) is personally liable to the corporation for the amount of the distribution that exceeds what could have been distributed without violating section 6.40(a) or 14.09(a) if the party asserting liability establishes that when taking the action the director did not comply with section 8.30.

(b) A director held liable under subsection (a) for an unlawful distribution is entitled to:

(1) contribution from every other director who could be held liable under subsection (a) for the unlawful distribution; and

(2) recoupment from each shareholder of the pro-rata portion of the amount of the unlawful distribution the shareholder accepted, knowing the distribution was made in violation of section 6.40(a) or 14.09(a).

(c) A proceeding to enforce:

(1) the liability of a director under subsection (a) is barred unless it is commenced within two years after the date (i) on which the effect of the distribution was measured under section 6.40(e) or (g), (ii) as of which the violation of section 6.40(a) occurred as the consequence of disregard of a restriction in the articles of incorporation or (iii) on which the distribution of assets to Shareholders under section 14.09(a) was made; or

(2) contribution or recoupment under subsection (b) is barred unless it is commenced within one year after the liability of the claimant has been finally adjudicated under subsection (a).

CROSS-REFERENCES

Article provision limiting liability, see § 2.02(b)(4).

Director duties in dissolution, see § 14.09.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

“Distribution” defined, see § 1.40.

Distributions generally, see § 6.40.

Indemnification, see §§ 2.02(b)(5), 8.50-8.59.

Subchapter D.
OFFICERS

§ 8.40. OFFICERS

(a) A corporation has the officers described in its bylaws or appointed by the board of directors in accordance with the bylaws.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The board of directors may elect individuals to fill one or more offices of the corporation. An officer may appoint one or more officers if authorized by the bylaws or the board of directors.

(c) The bylaws or the board of directors shall assign to one of the officers responsibility for preparing the minutes of the directors' and shareholders' meetings and for maintaining and authenticating the records of the corporation required to be kept under sections 16.01(a) and 16.01(e).

(d) The same individual may simultaneously hold more than one office in a corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Agents of corporation, see § 3.02.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Contract rights of officers, see § 8.44.

Duties of officers, see § 8.41.

Officer as employee of corporation, see § 1.40.

Officer standards of conduct, see § 8.42.

Removal of officers, see § 8.43.

“Secretary” defined, see § 1.40.

Tenure of officers, see § 8.44.

§ 8.41. DUTIES OF OFFICERS

Each officer has the authority and shall perform the duties set forth in the bylaws or, to the extent consistent with the bylaws, the duties prescribed by the board of directors or by direction of an officer authorized by the board of directors to prescribe the duties of other officers.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Assistant officers, see § 8.40.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

Officer as employee, see § 1.40.

Secretary, see § 1.40.

Standards of conduct:

 directors, see § 8.30.

 officers, see § 8.42.

§ 8.42. STANDARDS OF CONDUCT FOR OFFICERS

(a) An officer, when performing in such capacity, shall act:

 (1) in good faith;

 (2) with the care that a person in a like position would reasonably exercise under similar circumstances; and

 (3) in a manner the officer reasonably believes to be in the best interests of the corporation.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) In discharging those duties an officer, who does not have knowledge that makes reliance unwarranted, is entitled to rely on:

(1) the performance of properly delegated responsibilities by one or more employees of the corporation whom the officer reasonably believes to be reliable and competent in performing the responsibilities delegated; or

(2) information, opinions, reports or statements, including financial statements and other financial data, prepared or presented by one or more employees of the corporation whom the officer reasonably believes to be reliable and competent in the matters presented or by legal counsel, public accountants, or other persons retained by the corporation as to matters involving skills or expertise the officer reasonably believes are matters (i) within the particular person's professional or expert competence or (ii) as to which the particular person merits confidence.

(c) An officer shall not be liable to the corporation or its shareholders for any decision to take or not to take action, or any failure to take any action, as an officer, if the duties of the office are performed in compliance with this section. Whether an officer who does not comply with this section shall have liability will depend in such instance on applicable law, including those principles of Section 8.31 that have relevance.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appointment of officers, see § 8.40.

Duties of officers, see § 8.41.

Indemnification, see §§ 8.50-8.59.

Removal of officers, see § 8.43.

Standards of liability for directors, see § 8.31.

§ 8.43. RESIGNATION AND REMOVAL OF OFFICERS

(a) An officer may resign at any time by delivering notice to the corporation. A resignation is effective when the notice is delivered unless the notice specifies a later effective time. If a resignation is made effective at a later time and the board or the appointing officer accepts the future effective time, the board or the appointing officer may fill the pending vacancy before the effective time if the board or the appointing officer provides that the successor does not take office until the effective time.

(b) An officer may be removed at any time with or without cause by: (i) the board of directors; (ii) the officer who appointed such officer, unless the bylaws or the board of directors provide otherwise; or (iii) any other officer if authorized by the bylaws or the board of directors.

(c) In this section, "appointing officer" means the officer (including any successor to that officer) who appointed the officer resigning or being removed.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Contract rights of officers, see § 8.44.

"Deliver," see § 1.40.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

Notice to the corporation, see § 1.41.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.44. CONTRACT RIGHTS OF OFFICERS

- (a) The appointment of an officer does not itself create contract rights.
- (b) An officer's removal does not affect the officer's contract rights, if any, with the corporation. An officer's resignation does not affect the corporation's contract rights, if any, with the officer.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appointment of officers and assistant officers, see § 8.40.

Resignation or removal of officers, see § 8.43.

Subchapter E.

INDEMNIFICATION AND ADVANCE FOR EXPENSES

§ 8.50. SUBCHAPTER DEFINITIONS

In this subchapter:

- (1) "Corporation" includes any domestic or foreign predecessor entity of a corporation in a merger.
- (2) "Director" or "officer" means an individual who is or was a director or officer, respectively, of a corporation or who, while a director or officer of the corporation, is or was serving at the corporation's request as a director, officer, partner, trustee, employee, or agent of another domestic or foreign corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan, or other entity. A director or officer is considered to be serving an employee benefit plan at the corporation's request if his duties to the corporation also impose duties on, or otherwise involve services by, him to the plan or to participants in or beneficiaries of the plan. "Director" or "officer" includes, unless the context requires otherwise, the estate or personal representative of a director or officer.
- (3) "Disinterested director" means a director who, at the time of a vote referred to in section 8.53(c) or a vote or selection referred to in section 8.55(b) or (c), is not (i) a party to the proceeding, or (ii) an individual having a familial, financial, professional or employment relationship with the director whose indemnification or advance for expenses is the subject of the decision being made, which relationship would, in the circumstances, reasonably be expected to exert an influence on the director's judgment when voting on the decision being made.
- (4) "Expenses" includes counsel fees.
- (5) "Liability" means the obligation to pay a judgment, settlement, penalty, fine (including an excise tax assessed with respect to an employee benefit plan), or reasonable expenses incurred with respect to a proceeding.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(6) “Official capacity” means: (i) when used with respect to a director, the office of director in a corporation; and (ii) when used with respect to an officer, as contemplated in section 8.56, the office in a corporation held by the officer. “Official capacity” does not include service for any other domestic or foreign corporation or any partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan, or other entity.

(7) “Party” means an individual who was, is, or is threatened to be made, a defendant or respondent in a proceeding.

(8) “Proceeding” means any threatened, pending, or completed action, suit, or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative, arbitral, or investigative and whether formal or informal.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Act definitions, see § 1.40.

Effect of merger, see § 11.07(a).

Officers, see § 8.40(a).

Witness indemnification, see § 8.58(d).

§ 8.51. PERMISSIBLE INDEMNIFICATION

(a) Except as otherwise provided in this section, a corporation may indemnify an individual who is a party to a proceeding because he is a director against liability incurred in the proceeding if:

(1)

(i) he conducted himself in good faith; and

(ii) he reasonably believed:

(A) in the case of conduct in his official capacity, that his conduct was in the best interests of the corporation; and

(B) in all other cases, that his conduct was at least not opposed to the best interests of the corporation; and

(iii) in the case of any criminal proceeding, he had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful; or

(2) he engaged in conduct for which broader indemnification has been made permissible or obligatory under a provision of the articles of incorporation (as authorized by section 2.02(b)(5)).

(b) A director’s conduct with respect to an employee benefit plan for a purpose he reasonably believed to be in the interests of the participants in, and the beneficiaries of, the plan is conduct that satisfies the requirement of subsection (a)(1)(ii)(B).

(c) The termination of a proceeding by judgment, order, settlement, or conviction, or upon a plea of nolo contendere or its equivalent, is not, of itself, determinative that the director did not meet the relevant standard of conduct described in this section.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (d) Unless ordered by a court under section 8.54(a)(3), a corporation may not indemnify a director:
- (1) in connection with a proceeding by or in the right of the corporation, except for reasonable expenses incurred in connection with the proceeding if it is determined that the director has met the relevant standard of conduct under subsection (a); or
 - (2) in connection with any proceeding with respect to conduct for which he was adjudged liable on the basis that he received a financial benefit to which he was not entitled, whether or not involving action in his official capacity.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Advance for expenses, see § 8.53.
Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02(b)(5).
“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).
Court-ordered indemnification, see § 8.54.
Derivative proceedings, see §§ 7.40-7.47.
Determination of indemnification, see § 8.55.
“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).
Director’s conflicting interest transaction, see §§ 8.60-8.63.
Exclusivity of subchapter, see § 8.59.
“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).
“Liability” defined, see § 8.50(5).
Liability-limitation provisions, see § 2.02(b)(4).
Limits on indemnification, see § 8.58(c).
Mandatory indemnification, see § 8.52.
Obligatory indemnification, see §§ 2.02(b)(5), 8.58(a).
Officer indemnification, see § 8.56.
“Official capacity” defined, see § 8.50(6).
“Party” defined, see § 8.50(7).
“Proceeding” defined, see § 8.50(8).
Standards of conduct for directors, see § 8.30.
Standards of liability for directors, see § 8.31.

§ 8.52. MANDATORY INDEMNIFICATION

A corporation shall indemnify a director who was wholly successful, on the merits or otherwise, in the defense of any proceeding to which he was a party because he was a director of the corporation against reasonable expenses incurred by him in connection with the proceeding.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).
Court-ordered indemnification, see § 8.54.
“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).
“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).
Limits on indemnification, see § 8.58(c).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Party” defined, see § 8.50(7).

Permissible indemnification, see § 8.51.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 8.50(8).

§ 8.53. ADVANCE FOR EXPENSES

(a) A corporation may, before final disposition of a proceeding, advance funds to pay for or reimburse the reasonable expenses incurred by a director who is a party to a proceeding because he is a director if he delivers to the corporation:

(1) a written affirmation of his good faith belief that he has met the relevant standard of conduct described in section 8.51 or that the proceeding involves conduct for which liability has been eliminated under a provision of the articles of incorporation as authorized by section 2.02(b)(4); and

(2) his written undertaking to repay any funds advanced if he is not entitled to mandatory indemnification under section 8.52 and it is ultimately determined under section 8.54 or section 8.55 that he has not met the relevant standard of conduct described in section 8.51.

(b) The undertaking required by subsection (a)(2) must be an unlimited general obligation of the director but need not be secured and may be accepted without reference to the financial ability of the director to make repayment.

(c) Authorizations under this section shall be made:

(1) by the board of directors:

(i) if there are two or more disinterested directors, by a majority vote of all the disinterested directors (a majority of whom shall for such purpose constitute a quorum) or by a majority of the members of a committee of two or more disinterested directors appointed by such a vote; or

(ii) if there are fewer than two disinterested directors, by the vote necessary for action by the board in accordance with section 8.24(c), in which authorization directors who do not qualify as disinterested directors may participate; or

(2) by the shareholders, but shares owned by or voted under the control of a director who at the time does not qualify as a disinterested director may not be voted on the authorization.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Committees of the board, see § 8.25.

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).

Court-ordered indemnification, see § 8.54.

Determination of indemnification, see § 8.55.

“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).

“Disinterested director” defined, see § 8.50(3).

“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).

Limits on advance for expenses, see § 8.58(c).

“Party” defined, see § 8.50(7).

“Proceeding” defined, see § 8.50(8).

Quorum of directors, see § 8.24(a).

Standard for indemnification, see § 8.51.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.54. COURT-ORDERED INDEMNIFICATION AND ADVANCE FOR EXPENSES

(a) A director who is a party to a proceeding because he is a director may apply for indemnification or an advance for expenses to the court conducting the proceeding or to another court of competent jurisdiction. After receipt of an application and after giving any notice it considers necessary, the court shall:

(1) order indemnification if the court determines that the director is entitled to mandatory indemnification under section 8.52;

(2) order indemnification or advance for expenses if the court determines that the director is entitled to indemnification or advance for expenses pursuant to a provision authorized by section 8.58(a); or

(3) order indemnification or advance for expenses if the court determines, in view of all the relevant circumstances, that it is fair and reasonable

(i) to indemnify the director, or

(ii) to advance expenses to the director, even if he has not met the relevant standard of conduct set forth in section 8.51(a), failed to comply with section 8.53 or was adjudged liable in a proceeding referred to in subsection 8.51(d)(1) or (d)(2), but if he was adjudged so liable his indemnification shall be limited to reasonable expenses incurred in connection with the proceeding.

(b) If the court determines that the director is entitled to indemnification under subsection (a)(1) or to indemnification or advance for expenses under subsection (a)(2), it shall also order the corporation to pay the director's reasonable expenses incurred in connection with obtaining court-ordered indemnification or advance for expenses. If the court determines that the director is entitled to indemnification or advance for expenses under subsection (a)(3), it may also order the corporation to pay the director's reasonable expenses to obtain court-ordered indemnification or advance for expenses.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Advance for expenses, see § 8.53.

"Corporation" defined, see § 8.50(1).

"Director" defined, see § 8.50(2).

"Expenses" defined, see § 8.50(4).

Limits on indemnification and advance for expenses, see § 8.58(c).

Mandatory indemnification, see § 8.52.

Obligatory indemnification, see § 8.58(a).

"Party" defined, see § 8.50(7).

Permissible indemnification, see § 8.51.

"Proceeding" defined, see § 8.50(8).

§ 8.55. DETERMINATION AND AUTHORIZATION OF INDEMNIFICATION

(a) A corporation may not indemnify a director under section 8.51 unless authorized for a specific proceeding after a determination has been made that indemnification of the director is permissible because he has met the relevant standard of conduct set forth in section 8.51.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The determination shall be made:

(1) if there are two or more disinterested directors, by the board of directors by a majority vote of all the disinterested directors (a majority of whom shall for such purpose constitute a quorum), or by a majority of the members of a committee of two or more disinterested directors appointed by such a vote;

(2) by special legal counsel:

(i) selected in the manner prescribed in subdivision (1); or

(ii) if there are fewer than two disinterested directors, selected by the board of directors (in which selection directors who do not qualify as disinterested directors may participate); or

(3) by the shareholders, but shares owned by or voted under the control of a director who at the time does not qualify as a disinterested director may not be voted on the determination.

(c) Authorization of indemnification shall be made in the same manner as the determination that indemnification is permissible, except that if there are fewer than two disinterested directors or if the determination is made by special legal counsel, authorization of indemnification shall be made by those entitled under subsection (b)(2)(ii) to select special legal counsel.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Advance for expenses, see § 8.53.

Committees of the board, see § 8.25.

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).

“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).

“Disinterested director” defined, see § 8.50(3).

“Party” defined, see § 8.50(7).

“Proceeding” defined, see § 8.50(8).

Quorum of directors, see § 8.24(a).

Standard for indemnification, see § 8.51.

§ 8.56. INDEMNIFICATION OF OFFICERS

(a) A corporation may indemnify and advance expenses under this subchapter to an officer of the corporation who is a party to a proceeding because he is an officer of the corporation

(1) to the same extent as a director; and

(2) if he is an officer but not a director, to such further extent as may be provided by the articles of incorporation, the bylaws, a resolution of the board of directors, or contract except for

(A) liability in connection with a proceeding by or in the right of the corporation other than for reasonable expenses incurred in connection with the proceeding or

(B) liability arising out of conduct that constitutes

(i) receipt by him of a financial benefit to which he is not entitled,

(ii) an intentional infliction of harm on the corporation or the shareholders, or

(iii) an intentional violation of criminal law.

(b) The provisions of subsection (a)(2) shall apply to an officer who is also a director if the basis on which he is made a party to the proceeding is an act or omission solely as an officer.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) An officer of a corporation who is not a director is entitled to mandatory indemnification under section 8.52, and may apply to a court under section 8.54 for indemnification or an advance for expenses, in each case to the same extent to which a director may be entitled to indemnification or advance for expenses under those provisions.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Advance for expenses, see § 8.53.

Agents, indemnification of and advance for expenses for, see § 8.58(d).

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).

“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).

Employees, indemnification of and advance for expenses for, see § 8.58(d).

“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).

“Liability” defined, see § 8.50(5).

Limits on rights to indemnification and advance for expenses, see § 8.58(c).

Obligatory indemnification, see §§ 2.02(b)(5), 8.58(a).

“Officer” defined, see § 8.50(2).

Officer standards of conduct, see § 8.42.

“Party” defined, see § 8.50(7).

“Proceeding” defined, see § 8.50(8).

§ 8.57. INSURANCE

A corporation may purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of an individual who is a director or officer of the corporation, or who, while a director or officer of the corporation, serves at the corporation’s request as a director, officer, partner, trustee, employee, or agent of another domestic or foreign corporation, partnership, joint venture, trust, employee benefit plan, or other entity, against liability asserted against or incurred by him in that capacity or arising from his status as a director or officer, whether or not the corporation would have power to indemnify or advance expenses to him against the same liability under this subchapter.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).

“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).

Employees and agents, see § 8.58(d).

“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).

“Liability” defined, see § 8.50(5).

“Officer” defined, see § 8.50(2).

“Official capacity” defined, see § 8.50(6).

Standard for indemnification, see § 8.51.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.58. VARIATION BY CORPORATE ACTION; APPLICATION OF SUBCHAPTER

(a) A corporation may, by a provision in its articles of incorporation or bylaws or in a resolution adopted or a contract approved by its board of directors or shareholders, obligate itself in advance of the act or omission giving rise to a proceeding to provide indemnification in accordance with section 8.51 or advance funds to pay for or reimburse expenses in accordance with section 8.53. Any such obligatory provision shall be deemed to satisfy the requirements for authorization referred to in section 8.53(c) and in section 8.55(c). Any such provision that obligates the corporation to provide indemnification to the fullest extent permitted by law shall be deemed to obligate the corporation to advance funds to pay for or reimburse expenses in accordance with section 8.53 to the fullest extent permitted by law, unless the provision specifically provides otherwise.

(b) Any provision pursuant to subsection (a) shall not obligate the corporation to indemnify or advance expenses to a director of a predecessor of the corporation, pertaining to conduct with respect to the predecessor, unless otherwise specifically provided. Any provision for indemnification or advance for expenses in the articles of incorporation, bylaws, or a resolution of the board of directors or shareholders of a predecessor of the corporation in a merger or in a contract to which the predecessor is a party, existing at the time the merger takes effect, shall be governed by section 11.07(a)(4).

(c) A corporation may, by a provision in its articles of incorporation, limit any of the rights to indemnification or advance for expenses created by or pursuant to this subchapter.

(d) This subchapter does not limit a corporation's power to pay or reimburse expenses incurred by a director or an officer in connection with his appearance as a witness in a proceeding at a time when he is not a party.

(e) This subchapter does not limit a corporation's power to indemnify, advance expenses to or provide or maintain insurance on behalf of an employee or agent.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Advance for expenses, see § 8.53.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Amendments to articles of incorporation, see § 10.09.

Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).

“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).

“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).

Indemnification generally, see §§ 8.51-8.56.

Insurance, power to provide, see § 8.57.

“Officer” defined, see § 8.50(2).

“Party” defined, see § 8.50(7).

Predecessor, see § 8.50(1).

“Proceeding” defined, see § 8.50(8).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.59. EXCLUSIVITY OF SUBCHAPTER

A corporation may provide indemnification or advance expenses to a director or an officer only as permitted by this subchapter.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Advance for expenses, see § 8.53.

“Corporation” defined, see § 8.50(1).

“Director” defined, see § 8.50(2).

“Expenses” defined, see § 8.50(4).

“Officer” defined, see § 8.50(2).

Standards for indemnification, see §§ 8.51-8.56.

Subchapter F.

DIRECTORS’ CONFLICTING INTEREST TRANSACTIONS INTRODUCTORY COMMENT

§ 8.60. SUBCHAPTER DEFINITIONS

In this subchapter:

(1) “Conflicting interest” with respect to a corporation means the interest a director of the corporation has respecting a transaction effected or proposed to be effected by the corporation (or by a subsidiary of the corporation or any other entity in which the corporation has a controlling interest) if

(i) whether or not the transaction is brought before the board of directors of the corporation for action, the director knows at the time of commitment that he or a related person is a party to the transaction or has a beneficial financial interest in or so closely linked to the transaction and of such financial significance to the director or a related person that the interest would reasonably be expected to exert an influence on the director’s judgment if he were called upon to vote on the transaction; or

(ii) the transaction is brought (or is of such character and significance to the corporation that it would in the normal course be brought) before the board of directors of the corporation for action, and the director knows at the time of commitment that any of the following persons is either a party to the transaction or has a beneficial financial interest in or so closely linked to the transaction and of such financial significance to the person that the interest would reasonably be expected to exert an influence on the director’s judgment if he were called upon to vote on the transaction: (A) an entity (other than the corporation) of which the director is a director, general partner, agent, or employee; (B) a person that controls one or more of the entities specified in subclause (A) or an entity that is controlled by, or is under common control with, one or more of the entities specified in subclause (A); or (C) an individual who is a general partner, principal, or employer of the director.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(2) “Director’s conflicting interest transaction” with respect to a corporation means a transaction effected or proposed to be effected by the corporation (or by a subsidiary of the corporation or any other entity in which the corporation has a controlling interest) respecting which a director of the corporation has a conflicting interest.

(3) “Related person” of a director means (i) the spouse (or a parent or sibling thereof) of the director, or a child, grandchild, sibling, parent (or spouse of any thereof) of the director, or an individual having the same home as the director, or a trust or estate of which an individual specified in this clause (i) is a substantial beneficiary; or (ii) a trust, estate, incompetent, conservatee, or minor of which the director is a fiduciary.

(4) “Required disclosure” means disclosure by the director who has a conflicting interest of (i) the existence and nature of his conflicting interest, and (ii) all facts known to him respecting the subject matter of the transaction that an ordinarily prudent person would reasonably believe to be material to a judgment about whether or not to proceed with the transaction.

(5) “Time of commitment” respecting a transaction means the time when the transaction is consummated or, if made pursuant to contract, the time when the corporation (or its subsidiary or the entity in which it has a controlling interest) becomes contractually obligated so that its unilateral withdrawal from the transaction would entail significant loss, liability, or other damage.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Committees of board of directors, see § 8.25.

Director action, see §§ 8.20 & 8.21.

“Entity” defined, see § 1.40.

Indemnification, see §§ 8.50-8.59.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Quorum and voting:

by directors, see § 8.24.

by shareholders, see §§ 7.25-7.27.

Shareholder action, see §§ 7.01-7.04.

Standards of conduct:

officers, see § 8.42.

Vote needed to approve transactions by shareholders:

amendment to articles of incorporation, see § 10.03.

disposition of assets, see § 12.02.

generally, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

mergers and share exchanges, see § 11.04.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 8.61. JUDICIAL ACTION

(a) A transaction effected or proposed to be effected by a corporation (or by a subsidiary of the corporation or any other entity in which the corporation has a controlling interest) that is not a director's conflicting interest transaction may not be enjoined, set aside, or give rise to an award of damages or other sanctions, in a proceeding by a shareholder or by or in the right of the corporation, because a director of the corporation, or any person with whom or which he has a personal, economic, or other association, has an interest in the transaction.

(b) A director's conflicting interest transaction may not be enjoined, set aside, or give rise to an award of damages or other sanctions, in a proceeding by a shareholder or by or in the right of the corporation, because the director, or any person with whom or which he has a personal, economic, or other association, has an interest in the transaction, if:

(1) directors' action respecting the transaction was at any time taken in compliance with section 8.62;

(2) shareholders' action respecting the transaction was at any time taken in compliance with section 8.63; or

(3) the transaction, judged according to the circumstances at the time of commitment, is established to have been fair to the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Conflicting interest, see § 8.60(1).

Directors' action, see § 8.62.

Director's conflicting interest transaction, see § 8.60(2).

General standards for directors, see § 8.30.

Related person, see § 8.60(3).

Required disclosure, see § 8.60(4).

Shareholders' action, see § 8.63.

Time of commitment, see § 8.60(5).

§ 8.62. DIRECTORS' ACTION

(a) Directors' action respecting a transaction is effective for purposes of section 8.61(b)(1) if the transaction received the affirmative vote of a majority (but no fewer than two) of those qualified directors on the board of directors or on a duly empowered committee of the board who voted on the transaction after either required disclosure to them (to the extent the information was not known by them) or compliance with subsection (b); provided that action by a committee is so effective only if:

(1) all its members are qualified directors, and

(2) its members are either all the qualified directors on the board or are appointed by the affirmative vote of a majority of the qualified directors on the board.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) If a director has a conflicting interest respecting a transaction, but neither he nor a related person of the director specified in section 8.60(3)(i) is a party to the transaction, and if the director has a duty under law or professional canon, or a duty of confidentiality to another person, respecting information relating to the transaction such that the director may not make the disclosure described in section 8.60(4)(ii), then disclosure is sufficient for purposes of subsection (a) if the director (1) discloses to the directors voting on the transaction the existence and nature of his conflicting interest and informs them of the character and limitations imposed by that duty before their vote on the transaction, and (2) plays no part, directly or indirectly, in their deliberations or vote.

(c) A majority (but no fewer than two) of all the qualified directors on the board of directors, or on the committee, constitutes a quorum for purposes of action that complies with this section. Directors' action that otherwise complies with this section is not affected by the presence or vote of a director who is not a qualified director.

(d) For purposes of this section, "qualified director" means, with respect to a director's conflicting interest transaction, any director who does not have either (1) a conflicting interest respecting the transaction, or (2) a familial, financial, professional, or employment relationship with a second director who does have a conflicting interest respecting the transaction, which relationship would, in the circumstances, reasonably be expected to exert an influence on the first director's judgment when voting on the transaction.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Conflicting interest, see § 8.60(1).

Director's conflicting interest transaction, see § 8.60(2).

General standards for directors, see § 8.30.

Judicial action, see § 8.61.

Related person, see § 8.60(3).

Required disclosure, see § 8.60(4).

Shareholders' action, see § 8.63.

Time of commitment, see § 8.60(5).

§ 8.63. SHAREHOLDERS' ACTION

(a) Shareholders' action respecting a transaction is effective for purposes of section 8.61(b)(2) if a majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of all qualified shares were cast in favor of the transaction after (1) notice to shareholders describing the director's conflicting interest transaction, (2) provision of the information referred to in subsection (d), and (3) required disclosure to the shareholders who voted on the transaction (to the extent the information was not known by them).

(b) For purposes of this section, "qualified shares" means any shares entitled to vote with respect to the director's conflicting interest transaction except shares that, to the knowledge, before the vote, of the secretary (or other officer or agent of the corporation authorized to tabulate votes), are beneficially owned (or the voting of which is controlled) by a director who has a conflicting interest respecting the transaction or by a related person of the director, or both.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) A majority of the votes entitled to be cast by the holders of all qualified shares constitutes a quorum for purposes of action that complies with this section. Subject to the provisions of subsections (d) and (e), shareholders' action that otherwise complies with this section is not affected by the presence of holders, or the voting, of shares that are not qualified shares.

(d) For purposes of compliance with subsection (a), a director who has a conflicting interest respecting the transaction shall, before the shareholders' vote, inform the secretary (or other office or agent of the corporation authorized to tabulate votes) of the number, and the identity of persons holding or controlling the vote, of all shares that the director knows are beneficially owned (or the voting of which is controlled) by the director or by a related person of the director, or both.

(e) If a shareholders' vote does not comply with subsection (a) solely because of a failure of a director to comply with subsection (d), and if the director establishes that his failure did not determine and was not intended by him to influence the outcome of the vote, the court may, with or without further proceedings respecting section 8.61(b)(3), take such action respecting the transaction and the director, and give such effect, if any, to the shareholders' vote, as it considers appropriate in the circumstances.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Conflicting interest, see § 8.60(1).

Directors' action, see § 8.62.

Director's conflicting interest transaction, see § 8.60(2).

Judicial action, see § 8.61.

Related person, see § 8.60(3).

Required disclosure, see § 8.60(4).

Time of commitment, see § 8.60(5).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 9 DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

Subchapter A. PRELIMINARY PROVISIONS

- § 9.01. Excluded transactions
- § 9.02. Required approvals [Optional]

Subchapter B. DOMESTICATION

- § 9.20. Domestication
- § 9.21. Action on a plan of domestication
- § 9.22. Articles of domestication
- § 9.23. Surrender of charter upon domestication
- § 9.24. Effect of domestication
- § 9.25. Abandonment of a domestication

Subchapter C. NONPROFIT CONVERSION

- § 9.30. Nonprofit conversion
- § 9.31. Action on a plan of nonprofit conversion
- § 9.32. Articles of nonprofit conversion
- § 9.33. Surrender of charter upon foreign nonprofit conversion
- § 9.34. Effect of nonprofit conversion
- § 9.35. Abandonment of a nonprofit conversion

Subchapter D. FOREIGN NONPROFIT DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

- § 9.40. Foreign nonprofit domestication and conversion
- § 9.41. Articles of domestication and conversion
- § 9.42. Effect of foreign nonprofit domestication and conversion
- § 9.43. Abandonment of a foreign nonprofit domestication and conversion

Subchapter E. ENTITY CONVERSION

- § 9.50. Entity conversion authorized; definitions
- § 9.51. Plan of entity conversion
- § 9.52. Action on a plan of entity conversion
- § 9.53. Articles of entity conversion
- § 9.54. Surrender of charter upon conversion
- § 9.55. Effect of entity conversion
- § 9.56. Abandonment of an entity conversion

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter A.
PRELIMINARY PROVISIONS

§ 9.01. EXCLUDED TRANSACTIONS

This chapter may not be used to effect a transaction that:

(1) [converts an insurance company organized on the mutual principle to one organized on a stock-share basis];

(2)

(3)

§ 9.02. REQUIRED APPROVALS [Optional]

(a) If a domestic or foreign business corporation or eligible entity may not be a party to a merger without the approval of the [attorney general], the [department of banking], the [department of insurance] or the [public utility commission], the corporation or eligible entity shall not be a party to a transaction under this chapter without the prior approval of that agency.

(b) Property held in trust or for charitable purposes under the laws of this state by a domestic or foreign eligible entity shall not, by any transaction under this chapter, be diverted from the objects for which it was donated, granted or devised, unless and until the eligible entity obtains an order of [court] [the attorney general] specifying the disposition of the property to the extent required by and pursuant to [cite state statutory cy pres or other nondiversion statute].

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appeal from secretary of state's refusal to file document, see § 1.26.

"Domestic business corporation" defined, see § 1.40(4).

Filing duty of secretary of state, see § 1.25.

Subchapter B.
DOMESTICATION

§ 9.20. DOMESTICATION

(a) A foreign business corporation may become a domestic business corporation only if the domestication is permitted by the organic law of the foreign corporation.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) A domestic business corporation may become a foreign business corporation if the domestication is permitted by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction. Regardless of whether the laws of the foreign jurisdiction require the adoption of a plan of domestication, the domestication shall be approved by the adoption by the corporation of a plan of domestication in the manner provided in this subchapter.

(c) The plan of domestication must include:

- (1) a statement of the jurisdiction in which the corporation is to be domesticated;
- (2) the terms and conditions of the domestication;
- (3) the manner and basis of reclassifying the shares of the corporation following its domestication into shares or other securities, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing; and
- (4) any desired amendments to the articles of incorporation of the corporation following its domestication.

(d) The plan of domestication may also include a provision that the plan may be amended prior to filing the document required by the laws of this state or the other jurisdiction to consummate the domestication, except that subsequent to approval of the plan by the shareholders the plan may not be amended to change:

- (1) the amount or kind of shares or other securities, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, cash, or other property to be received by the shareholders under the plan;
- (2) the articles of incorporation as they will be in effect immediately following the domestication, except for changes permitted by section 10.05 or by comparable provisions of the laws of the other jurisdiction; or
- (3) any of the other terms or conditions of the plan if the change would adversely affect any of the shareholders in any material respect.

(e) Terms of a plan of domestication may be made dependent upon facts objectively ascertainable outside the plan in accordance with section 1.20(k).

(f) If any debt security, note or similar evidence of indebtedness for money borrowed, whether secured or unsecured, or a contract of any kind, issued, incurred or executed by a domestic business corporation before [the effective date of this subchapter] contains a provision applying to a merger of the corporation and the document does not refer to a domestication of the corporation, the provision shall be deemed to apply to a domestication of the corporation until such time as the provision is amended subsequent to that date.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of domestication, see § 9.25.

Approval of plan, see § 9.21.

Articles of domestication, see § 9.22.

Articles of incorporation following domestication, see § 9.22(b).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effect of domestication, see § 9.24.

Excluded transactions, see § 9.01.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

“Organic law” defined, see § 1.40(15B).

[Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

§ 9.21. ACTION ON A PLAN OF DOMESTICATION

In the case of a domestication of a domestic business corporation in a foreign jurisdiction:

(1) The plan of domestication must be adopted by the board of directors.

(2) After adopting the plan of domestication the board of directors must submit the plan to the shareholders for their approval. The board of directors must also transmit to the shareholders a recommendation that the shareholders approve the plan, unless the board of directors makes a determination that because of conflicts of interest or other special circumstances it should not make such a recommendation, in which case the board of directors must transmit to the shareholders the basis for that determination.

(3) The board of directors may condition its submission of the plan of domestication to the shareholders on any basis.

(4) If the approval of the shareholders is to be given at a meeting, the corporation must notify each shareholder, whether or not entitled to vote, of the meeting of shareholders at which the plan of domestication is to be submitted for approval. The notice must state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider the plan and must contain or be accompanied by a copy or summary of the plan. The notice shall include or be accompanied by a copy of the articles of incorporation as they will be in effect immediately after the domestication.

(5) Unless the articles of incorporation, or the board of directors acting pursuant to paragraph (3), requires a greater vote or a greater number of votes to be present, approval of the plan of domestication requires the approval of the shareholders at a meeting at which a quorum consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the plan exists, and, if any class or series of shares is entitled to vote as a separate group on the plan, the approval of each such separate voting group at a meeting at which a quorum of the voting group consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the domestication by that voting group exists.

(6) Separate voting by voting groups is required by each class or series of shares that:

(i) are to be reclassified under the plan of domestication into other securities, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing;

(ii) would be entitled to vote as a separate group on a provision of the plan that, if contained in a proposed amendment to articles of incorporation, would require action by separate voting groups under section 10.04; or

(iii) is entitled under the articles of incorporation to vote as a voting group to approve an amendment of the articles.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(7) If any provision of the articles of incorporation, bylaws or an agreement to which any of the directors or shareholders are parties, adopted or entered into before [the effective date of this subchapter], applies to a merger of the corporation and that document does not refer to a domestication of the corporation, the provision shall be deemed to apply to a domestication of the corporation until such time as the provision is amended subsequent to that date.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of domestication, see § 9.25.

Contents of plan of domestication, see § 9.20.

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

§ 9.22. ARTICLES OF DOMESTICATION

(a) After the domestication of a foreign business corporation has been authorized as required by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction, articles of domestication shall be executed by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall set forth:

(1) the name of the corporation immediately before the filing of the articles of domestication and, if that name is unavailable for use in this state or the corporation desires to change its name in connection with the domestication, a name that satisfies the requirements of section 4.01;

(2) the jurisdiction of incorporation of the corporation immediately before the filing of the articles of domestication and the date the corporation was incorporated in that jurisdiction; and

(3) a statement that the domestication of the corporation in this state was duly authorized as required by the laws of the jurisdiction in which the corporation was incorporated immediately before its domestication in this state.

(b) The articles of domestication shall either contain all of the provisions that section 2.02(a) requires to be set forth in articles of incorporation and any other desired provisions that section 2.02(b) permits to be included in articles of incorporation, or shall have attached articles of incorporation. In either case, provisions that would not be required to be included in restated articles of incorporation may be omitted.

(c) The articles of domestication shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing, and shall take effect at the effective time provided in section 1.23.

(d) If the foreign corporation is authorized to transact business in this state under chapter 15, its certificate of authority shall be cancelled automatically on the effective date of its domestication.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

Effect of domestication, see § 9.24.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

Surrender of charter upon domestication, see § 9.23.

§ 9.23. SURRENDER OF CHARTER UPON DOMESTICATION

(a) Whenever a domestic business corporation has adopted and approved, in the manner required by this subchapter, a plan of domestication providing for the corporation to be domesticated in a foreign jurisdiction, articles of charter surrender shall be executed on behalf of the corporation by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles of charter surrender shall set forth:

(1) the name of the corporation;

(2) a statement that the articles of charter surrender are being filed in connection with the domestication of the corporation in a foreign jurisdiction;

(3) a statement that the domestication was duly approved by the shareholders and, if voting by any separate voting group was required, by each such separate voting group, in the manner required by this Act and the articles of incorporation;

(4) the corporation’s new jurisdiction of incorporation.

(b) The articles of charter surrender shall be delivered by the corporation to the secretary of state for filing. The articles of charter surrender shall take effect on the effective time provided in section 1.23.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effect of domestication, see § 9.24.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

§ 9.24. EFFECT OF DOMESTICATION

(a) When a domestication becomes effective:

(1) the title to all real and personal property, both tangible and intangible, of the corporation remains in the corporation without reversion or impairment;

(2) the liabilities of the corporation remain the liabilities of the corporation;

(3) an action or proceeding pending against the corporation continues against the corporation as if the domestication had not occurred;

(4) the articles of domestication, or the articles of incorporation attached to the articles of domestication, constitute the articles of incorporation of a foreign corporation domesticating in this state;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(5) the shares of the corporation are reclassified into shares, other securities, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, or into cash or other property in accordance with the terms of the domestication, and the shareholders are entitled only to the rights provided by those terms and to any appraisal rights they may have under the organic law of the domesticating corporation; and

(6) the corporation is deemed to:

(i) be incorporated under and subject to the organic law of the domesticated corporation for all purposes;

(ii) be the same corporation without interruption as the domesticating corporation; and

(iii) have been incorporated on the date the domesticating corporation was originally incorporated.

(b) When a domestication of a domestic business corporation in a foreign jurisdiction becomes effective, the foreign business corporation is deemed to:

(1) appoint the secretary of state as its agent for service of process in a proceeding to enforce the rights of shareholders who exercise appraisal rights in connection with the domestication; and

(2) agree that it will promptly pay the amount, if any, to which such shareholders are entitled under chapter 13.

(c) The owner liability of a shareholder in a foreign corporation that is domesticated in this state shall be as follows:

(1) The domestication does not discharge any owner liability under the laws of the foreign jurisdiction to the extent any such owner liability arose before the effective time of the articles of domestication.

(2) The shareholder shall not have owner liability under the laws of the foreign jurisdiction for any debt, obligation or liability of the corporation that arises after the effective time of the articles of domestication.

(3) The provisions of the laws of the foreign jurisdiction shall continue to apply to the collection or discharge of any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the domestication had not occurred.

(4) The shareholder shall have whatever rights of contribution from other shareholders are provided by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction with respect to any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the domestication had not occurred.

[(d) A shareholder who becomes subject to owner liability for some or all of the debts, obligations or liabilities of the corporation as a result of its domestication in this state shall have owner liability only for those debts, obligations or liabilities of the corporation that arise after the effective time of the articles of domestication.]

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

“Owner liability” defined, see § 1.40(15C).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 9.25. ABANDONMENT OF A DOMESTICATION

(a) Unless otherwise provided in a plan of domestication of a domestic business corporation, after the plan has been adopted and approved as required by this subchapter, and at any time before the domestication has become effective, it may be abandoned by the board of directors without action by the shareholders.

(b) If a domestication is abandoned under subsection (a) after articles of charter surrender have been filed with the secretary of state but before the domestication has become effective, a statement that the domestication has been abandoned in accordance with this section, executed by an officer or other duly authorized representative, shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing prior to the effective date of the domestication. The statement shall take effect upon filing and the domestication shall be deemed abandoned and shall not become effective.

(c) If the domestication of a foreign business corporation in this state is abandoned in accordance with the laws of the foreign jurisdiction after articles of domestication have been filed with the secretary of state, a statement that the domestication has been abandoned, executed by an officer or other duly authorized representative, shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing. The statement shall take effect upon filing and the domestication shall be deemed abandoned and shall not become effective.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Approval of domestication, see § 9.21.

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

Subchapter C.

NONPROFIT CONVERSION

§ 9.30. NONPROFIT CONVERSION

(a) A domestic business corporation may become a domestic nonprofit corporation pursuant to a plan of nonprofit conversion.

(b) A domestic business corporation may become a foreign nonprofit corporation if the nonprofit conversion is permitted by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction. Regardless of whether the laws of the foreign jurisdiction require the adoption of a plan of nonprofit conversion, the foreign nonprofit conversion shall be approved by the adoption by the domestic business corporation of a plan of nonprofit conversion in the manner provided in this subchapter.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) The plan of nonprofit conversion must include:

- (1) the terms and conditions of the conversion;
- (2) the manner and basis of reclassifying the shares of the corporation following its conversion into memberships, if any, or securities, obligations, rights to acquire memberships or securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing;
- (3) any desired amendments to the articles of incorporation of the corporation following its conversion; and
- (4) if the domestic business corporation is to be converted to a foreign nonprofit corporation, a statement of the jurisdiction in which the corporation will be incorporated after the conversion.

(d) The plan of nonprofit conversion may also include a provision that the plan may be amended prior to filing articles of nonprofit conversion, except that subsequent to approval of the plan by the shareholders the plan may not be amended to change:

- (1) the amount or kind of memberships or securities, obligations, rights to acquire memberships or securities, cash, or other property to be received by the shareholders under the plan;
- (2) the articles of incorporation as they will be in effect immediately following the conversion, except for changes permitted by section 10.05; or
- (3) any of the other terms or conditions of the plan if the change would adversely affect any of the shareholders in any material respect.

(e) Terms of a plan of nonprofit conversion may be made dependent upon facts objectively ascertainable outside the plan in accordance with section 1.20(k).

(f) If any debt security, note or similar evidence of indebtedness for money borrowed, whether secured or unsecured, or a contract of any kind, issued, incurred or executed by a domestic business corporation before [the effective date of this subchapter] contains a provision applying to a merger of the corporation and the document does not refer to a nonprofit conversion of the corporation, the provision shall be deemed to apply to a nonprofit conversion of the corporation until such time as the provision is amended subsequent to that date.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of nonprofit status conversion, see § 9.35.

Approval of plan, see § 9.31.

Articles of nonprofit conversion, see § 9.32.

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(14C).

Effect of nonprofit status conversion, see § 9.34.

Excluded transactions, see § 9.01.

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

“Membership” defined, see § 1.40(14A).

[Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 9.31. ACTION ON A PLAN OF NONPROFIT CONVERSION

In the case of a conversion of a domestic business corporation to a domestic or foreign nonprofit corporation:

(1) The plan of nonprofit conversion must be adopted by the board of directors.

(2) After adopting the plan of nonprofit conversion, the board of directors must submit the plan to the shareholders for their approval. The board of directors must also transmit to the shareholders a recommendation that the shareholders approve the plan, unless the board of directors makes a determination that because of conflicts of interest or other special circumstances it should not make such a recommendation, in which case the board of directors must transmit to the shareholders the basis for that determination.

(3) The board of directors may condition its submission of the plan of nonprofit conversion to the shareholders on any basis.

(4) If the approval of the shareholders is to be given at a meeting, the corporation must notify each shareholder of the meeting of shareholders at which the plan of nonprofit conversion is to be submitted for approval. The notice must state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider the plan and must contain or be accompanied by a copy or summary of the plan. The notice shall include or be accompanied by a copy of the articles of incorporation as they will be in effect immediately after the nonprofit conversion.

(5) Unless the articles of incorporation, or the board of directors acting pursuant to paragraph (3), requires a greater vote or a greater number of votes to be present, approval of the plan of nonprofit conversion requires the approval of each class or series of shares of the corporation voting as a separate voting group at a meeting at which a quorum of the voting group consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the nonprofit conversion by that voting group exists.

(6) If any provision of the articles of incorporation, bylaws or an agreement to which any of the directors or shareholders are parties, adopted or entered into before [the effective date of this subchapter], applies to a merger of the corporation and the document does not refer to a nonprofit conversion of the corporation, the provision shall be deemed to apply to a nonprofit conversion of the corporation until such time as the provision is amended subsequent to that date.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of nonprofit conversion, see § 9.35.

Contents of plan of nonprofit conversion, see § 9.30.

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(14C).

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 9.32. ARTICLES OF NONPROFIT CONVERSION

(a) After a plan of nonprofit conversion providing for the conversion of a domestic business corporation to a domestic nonprofit corporation has been adopted and approved as required by this Act, articles of nonprofit conversion shall be executed on behalf of the corporation by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall set forth:

(1) the name of the corporation immediately before the filing of the articles of nonprofit conversion and if that name does not satisfy the requirements of [the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act], or the corporation desires to change its name in connection with the conversion, a name that satisfies the requirements of [the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act];

(2) a statement that the plan of nonprofit conversion was duly approved by the shareholders in the manner required by this Act and the articles of incorporation.

(b) The articles of nonprofit conversion shall either contain all of the provisions that [the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act] requires to be set forth in articles of incorporation of a domestic nonprofit corporation and any other desired provisions permitted by [the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act], or shall have attached articles of incorporation that satisfy the requirements of [the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act]. In either case, provisions that would not be required to be included in restated articles of incorporation of a domestic nonprofit corporation may be omitted.

(c) The articles of nonprofit conversion shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing, and shall take effect at the effective time provided in section 1.23.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(14C).

Effect of nonprofit conversion, see § 9.34.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

Surrender of charter upon foreign nonprofit conversion, see § 9.33.

§ 9.33. SURRENDER OF CHARTER UPON FOREIGN NONPROFIT CONVERSION

(a) Whenever a domestic business corporation has adopted and approved, in the manner required by this subchapter, a plan of nonprofit conversion providing for the corporation to be converted to a foreign nonprofit corporation, articles of charter surrender shall be executed on behalf of the corporation by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles of charter surrender shall set forth:

(1) the name of the corporation;

(2) a statement that the articles of charter surrender are being filed in connection with the conversion of the corporation to a foreign nonprofit corporation;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(3) a statement that the foreign nonprofit conversion was duly approved by the shareholders in the manner required by this Act and the articles of incorporation;

(4) the corporation's new jurisdiction of incorporation.

(b) The articles of charter surrender shall be delivered by the corporation to the secretary of state for filing. The articles of charter surrender shall take effect on the effective time provided in section 1.23.

CROSS-REFERENCES

"Deliver" defined, see § 1.40(5).

"Domestic business corporation" defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effect of nonprofit conversion, see § 9.34.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

"Foreign nonprofit corporation" defined, see § 1.40(10A).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

§ 9.34. EFFECT OF NONPROFIT CONVERSION

(a) When a conversion of a domestic business corporation to a domestic nonprofit corporation becomes effective:

(1) the title to all real and personal property, both tangible and intangible, of the corporation remains in the corporation without reversion or impairment;

(2) the liabilities of the corporation remain the liabilities of the corporation;

(3) an action or proceeding pending against the corporation continues against the corporation as if the conversion had not occurred;

(4) the articles of incorporation of the domestic or foreign nonprofit corporation become effective;

(5) the shares of the corporation are reclassified into memberships, securities, obligations, rights to acquire memberships or securities, or into cash or other property in accordance with the plan of conversion, and the shareholders are entitled only to the rights provided in the plan of nonprofit conversion or to any rights they may have under chapter 13; and

(6) the corporation is deemed to:

(i) be a domestic nonprofit corporation for all purposes;

(ii) be the same corporation without interruption as the corporation that existed prior to the conversion; and

(iii) have been incorporated on the date that it was originally incorporated as a domestic business corporation.

(b) When a conversion of a domestic business corporation to a foreign nonprofit corporation becomes effective, the foreign nonprofit corporation is deemed to:

(1) appoint the secretary of state as its agent for service of process in a proceeding to enforce the rights of shareholders who exercise appraisal rights in connection with the conversion; and

(2) agree that it will promptly pay the amount, if any, to which such shareholders are entitled under chapter 13.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

[(c) The owner liability of a shareholder in a domestic business corporation that converts to a domestic nonprofit corporation shall be as follows:

(1) The conversion does not discharge any owner liability of the shareholder as a shareholder of the business corporation to the extent any such owner liability arose before the effective time of the articles of nonprofit conversion.

(2) The shareholder shall not have owner liability for any debt, obligation or liability of the nonprofit corporation that arises after the effective time of the articles of nonprofit conversion.

(3) The laws of this state shall continue to apply to the collection or discharge of any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the conversion had not occurred and the nonprofit corporation were still a business corporation.

(4) The shareholder shall have whatever rights of contribution from other shareholders are provided by the laws of this state with respect to any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the conversion had not occurred and the nonprofit corporation were still a business corporation.

(d) A shareholder who becomes subject to owner liability for some or all of the debts, obligations or liabilities of the nonprofit corporation shall have owner liability only for those debts, obligations or liabilities of the nonprofit corporation that arise after the effective time of the articles of nonprofit conversion.]

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

“Membership” defined, see § 1.40(14A).

“Owner liability” defined, see § 1.40(15C).

§ 9.35. ABANDONMENT OF A NONPROFIT CONVERSION

(a) Unless otherwise provided in a plan of nonprofit conversion of a domestic business corporation, after the plan has been adopted and approved as required by this subchapter, and at any time before the nonprofit conversion has become effective, it may be abandoned by the board of directors without action by the shareholders.

(b) If a nonprofit conversion is abandoned under subsection (a) after articles of nonprofit conversion or articles of charter surrender have been filed with the secretary of state but before the nonprofit conversion has become effective, a statement that the nonprofit conversion has been abandoned in accordance with this section, executed by an officer or other duly authorized representative, shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing prior to the effective date of the nonprofit conversion. The statement shall take effect upon filing and the nonprofit conversion shall be deemed abandoned and shall not become effective.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Approval of nonprofit conversion, see § 9.31

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effective time and date of filing, see §§ 1.23 and 9.32(c).

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Subchapter D.

FOREIGN NONPROFIT DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

§ 9.40. FOREIGN NONPROFIT DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

A foreign nonprofit corporation may become a domestic business corporation if the domestication and conversion is permitted by the organic law of the foreign nonprofit corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of foreign nonprofit domestication and conversion, see § 9.43.

Articles of domestication and conversion, see § 9.41.

Articles of incorporation following domestication and conversion, see § 9.41(b).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effect of foreign nonprofit domestication and conversion, see § 9.42.

Excluded transactions, see § 9.01.

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

“Organic law” defined, see § 1.40(15A).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

§ 9.41. ARTICLES OF DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

(a) After the conversion of a foreign nonprofit corporation to a domestic business corporation has been authorized as required by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction, articles of domestication and conversion shall be executed by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall set forth:

(1) the name of the corporation immediately before the filing of the articles of domestication and conversion and, if that name is unavailable for use in this state or the corporation desires to change its name in connection with the domestication and conversion, a name that satisfies the requirements of section 4.01;

(2) the jurisdiction of incorporation of the corporation immediately before the filing of the articles of domestication and conversion and the date the corporation was incorporated in that jurisdiction; and

(3) a statement that the domestication and conversion of the corporation in this state was duly authorized as required by the laws of the jurisdiction in which the corporation was incorporated immediately before its domestication and conversion in this state.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The articles of domestication and conversion shall either contain all of the provisions that section 2.02(a) requires to be set forth in articles of incorporation and any other desired provisions that section 2.02(b) permits to be included in articles of incorporation, or shall have attached articles of incorporation. In either case, provisions that would not be required to be included in restated articles of incorporation may be omitted.

(c) The articles of domestication and conversion shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing, and shall take effect at the effective time provided in section 1.23.

(d) If the foreign nonprofit corporation is authorized to transact business in this state under [the foreign qualification provision of the Model Nonprofit Corporation Act], its certificate of authority shall be cancelled automatically on the effective date of its domestication and conversion.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effect of domestication and conversion, see § 9.42.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

§ 9.42. EFFECT OF FOREIGN NONPROFIT DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

(a) When a domestication and conversion of a foreign nonprofit corporation to a domestic business corporation becomes effective:

(1) the title to all real and personal property, both tangible and intangible, of the corporation remains in the corporation without reversion or impairment;

(2) the liabilities of the corporation remain the liabilities of the corporation;

(3) an action or proceeding pending against the corporation continues against the corporation as if the domestication and conversion had not occurred;

(4) the articles of domestication and conversion, or the articles of incorporation attached to the articles of domestication and conversion, constitute the articles of incorporation of the corporation;

(5) shares, other securities, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities of the corporation, or cash or other property shall be issued or paid as provided pursuant to the laws of the foreign jurisdiction, so long as at least one share is outstanding immediately after the effective time; and

(6) the corporation is deemed to:

(i) be a domestic corporation for all purposes;

(ii) be the same corporation without interruption as the foreign nonprofit corporation;

and

(iii) have been incorporated on the date the foreign nonprofit corporation was originally incorporated.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The owner liability of a member of a foreign nonprofit corporation that domesticates and converts to a domestic business corporation shall be as follows:

(1) The domestication and conversion does not discharge any owner liability under the laws of the foreign jurisdiction to the extent any such owner liability arose before the effective time of the articles of domestication and conversion.

(2) The member shall not have owner liability under the laws of the foreign jurisdiction for any debt, obligation or liability of the corporation that arises after the effective time of the articles of domestication and conversion.

(3) The provisions of the laws of the foreign jurisdiction shall continue to apply to the collection or discharge of any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the domestication and conversion had not occurred.

(4) The member shall have whatever rights of contribution from other members are provided by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction with respect to any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the domestication and conversion had not occurred.

(c) A member of a foreign nonprofit corporation who becomes subject to owner liability for some or all of the debts, obligations or liabilities of the corporation as a result of its domestication and conversion in this state shall have owner liability only for those debts, obligations or liabilities of the corporation that arise after the effective time of the articles of domestication and conversion.]

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

“Owner liability” defined, see § 1.40(15C).

§ 9.43. ABANDONMENT OF A FOREIGN NONPROFIT DOMESTICATION AND CONVERSION

If the domestication and conversion of a foreign nonprofit corporation to a domestic business corporation is abandoned in accordance with the laws of the foreign jurisdiction after articles of domestication and conversion have been filed with the secretary of state, a statement that the domestication and conversion has been abandoned, executed by an officer or other duly authorized representative, shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing. The statement shall take effect upon filing and the domestication and conversion shall be deemed abandoned and shall not become effective.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter E. ENTITY CONVERSION

§ 9.50. ENTITY CONVERSION AUTHORIZED; DEFINITIONS

- (a) A domestic business corporation may become a domestic unincorporated entity pursuant to a plan of entity conversion.
- (b) A domestic business corporation may become a foreign unincorporated entity if the entity conversion is permitted by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction.
- (c) A domestic unincorporated entity may become a domestic business corporation. If the organic law of a domestic unincorporated entity does not provide procedures for the approval of an entity conversion, the conversion shall be adopted and approved, and the entity conversion effectuated, in the same manner as a merger of the unincorporated entity. If the organic law of a domestic unincorporated entity does not provide procedures for the approval of either an entity conversion or a merger, a plan of entity conversion shall be adopted and approved, the entity conversion effectuated, and appraisal rights exercised, in accordance with the procedures in this subchapter and chapter 13. Without limiting the provisions of this subsection, a domestic unincorporated entity whose organic law does not provide procedures for the approval of an entity conversion shall be subject to subsection (e) and section 9.52(7). For purposes of applying this subchapter and chapter 13:
- (1) the unincorporated entity, its interest holders, interests and organic documents taken together, shall be deemed to be a domestic business corporation, shareholders, shares and articles of incorporation, respectively and vice versa, as the context may require; and
 - (2) if the business and affairs of the unincorporated entity are managed by a group of persons that is not identical to the interest holders, that group shall be deemed to be the board of directors.
- (d) A foreign unincorporated entity may become a domestic business corporation if the organic law of the foreign unincorporated entity authorizes it to become a corporation in another jurisdiction.
- (e) If any debt security, note or similar evidence of indebtedness for money borrowed, whether secured or unsecured, or a contract of any kind, issued, incurred or executed by a domestic business corporation before [the effective date of this subchapter], applies to a merger of the corporation and the document does not refer to an entity conversion of the corporation, the provision shall be deemed to apply to an entity conversion of the corporation until such time as the provision is amended subsequent to that date.
- (f) As used in this subchapter:
- (1) “Converting entity” means the domestic business corporation or domestic unincorporated entity that adopts a plan of entity conversion or the foreign unincorporated entity converting to a domestic business corporation.
 - (2) “Surviving entity” means the corporation or unincorporated entity that is in existence immediately after consummation of an entity conversion pursuant to this subchapter.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).
“Domestic unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(6A).
Excluded transactions, see § 9.01.
“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).
“Interest” defined, see § 1.40(13A).
“Interest holder” defined, see § 1.40(13B).
“Organic document” defined, see § 1.40(15A).
“Organic law” defined, see § 1.40(15B).
Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

§ 9.51. PLAN OF ENTITY CONVERSION

(a) A plan of entity conversion must include:

- (1) a statement of the type of other entity the surviving entity will be and, if it will be a foreign other entity, its jurisdiction of organization;
- (2) the terms and conditions of the conversion;
- (3) the manner and basis of converting the shares of the domestic business corporation following its conversion into interests or other securities, obligations, rights to acquire interests or other securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing; and
- (4) the full text, as they will be in effect immediately after consummation of the conversion, of the organic documents of the surviving entity.

(b) The plan of entity conversion may also include a provision that the plan may be amended prior to filing articles of entity conversion, except that subsequent to approval of the plan by the shareholders the plan may not be amended to change:

- (1) the amount or kind of shares or other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares, other securities or interests, cash, or other property to be received under the plan by the shareholders;
- (2) the organic documents that will be in effect immediately following the conversion, except for changes permitted by a provision of the organic law of the surviving entity comparable to section 10.05; or
- (3) any of the other terms or conditions of the plan if the change would adversely affect any of the shareholders in any material respect.

(c) Terms of a plan of entity conversion may be made dependent upon facts objectively ascertainable outside the plan in accordance with section 1.20(k).

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of entity conversion, see § 9.56.
Application to domestic other entities, see § 9.50(c).
Approval of plan, see § 9.52.
“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).
“Domestic unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(6A).
Effect of entity conversion, see § 9.55.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

“Interest” defined, see § 1.40(13A).

“Interest holder” defined, see § 1.40(13B).

“Organic document” defined, see § 1.40(15A).

“Surviving entity” defined, see § 9.50(e)(2).

“Unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(24A).

§ 9.52. ACTION ON A PLAN OF ENTITY CONVERSION

In the case of an entity conversion of a domestic business corporation to a domestic or foreign unincorporated entity:

(1) The plan of entity conversion must be adopted by the board of directors.

(2) After adopting the plan of entity conversion, the board of directors must submit the plan to the shareholders for their approval. The board of directors must also transmit to the shareholders a recommendation that the shareholders approve the plan, unless the board of directors makes a determination that because of conflicts of interest or other special circumstances it should not make such a recommendation, in which case the board of directors must transmit to the shareholders the basis for that determination.

(3) The board of directors may condition its submission of the plan of entity conversion to the shareholders on any basis.

(4) If the approval of the shareholders is to be given at a meeting, the corporation must notify each shareholder, whether or not entitled to vote, of the meeting of shareholders at which the plan of entity conversion is to be submitted for approval. The notice must state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider the plan and must contain or be accompanied by a copy or summary of the plan. The notice shall include or be accompanied by a copy of the organic documents as they will be in effect immediately after the entity conversion.

(5) Unless the articles of incorporation, or the board of directors acting pursuant to paragraph (3), requires a greater vote or a greater number of votes to be present, approval of the plan of entity conversion requires the approval of each class or series of shares of the corporation voting as a separate voting group at a meeting at which a quorum of the voting group consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the conversion by that voting group exists.

(6) If any provision of the articles of incorporation, bylaws or an agreement to which any of the directors or shareholders are parties, adopted or entered into before [the effective date of this subchapter], applies to a merger of the corporation and the document does not refer to an entity conversion of the corporation, the provision shall be deemed to apply to an entity conversion of the corporation until such time as the provision is subsequently amended.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(7) If as a result of the conversion one or more shareholders of the corporation would become subject to owner liability for the debts, obligations or liabilities of any other person or entity, approval of the plan of conversion shall require the execution, by each such shareholder, of a separate written consent to become subject to such owner liability.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of entity conversion, see § 9.55.

Application to domestic other entities, see § 9.50(c).

Contents of plan of entity conversion, see § 9.51.

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(6A).

“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

“Organic document” defined, see § 1.40(15A).

“Owner liability” defined, see § 1.40(15C).

§ 9.53. ARTICLES OF ENTITY CONVERSION

(a) After the conversion of a domestic business corporation to a domestic unincorporated entity has been adopted and approved as required by this Act, articles of entity conversion shall be executed on behalf of the corporation by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall:

(1) set forth the name of the corporation immediately before the filing of the articles of entity conversion and the name to which the name of the corporation is to be changed, which shall be a name that satisfies the organic law of the surviving entity;

(2) state the type of unincorporated entity that the surviving entity will be;

(3) set forth a statement that the plan of entity conversion was duly approved by the shareholders in the manner required by this Act and the articles of incorporation;

(4) if the surviving entity is a filing entity, either contain all of the provisions required to be set forth in its public organic document and any other desired provisions that are permitted, or have attached a public organic document; except that, in either case, provisions that would not be required to be included in a restated public organic document may be omitted.

(b) After the conversion of a domestic unincorporated entity to a domestic business corporation has been adopted and approved as required by the organic law of the unincorporated entity, articles of entity conversion shall be executed on behalf of the unincorporated entity by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall:

(1) set forth the name of the unincorporated entity immediately before the filing of the articles of entity conversion and the name to which the name of the unincorporated entity is to be changed, which shall be a name that satisfies the requirements of section 4.01;

(2) set forth a statement that the plan of entity conversion was duly approved in accordance with the organic law of the unincorporated entity;

(3) either contain all of the provisions that section 2.02(a) requires to be set forth in articles of incorporation and any other desired provisions that section 2.02(b) permits to be included in articles of incorporation, or have attached articles of incorporation; except that, in either case, provisions that would not be required to be included in restated articles of incorporation of a domestic business corporation may be omitted.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) After the conversion of a foreign unincorporated entity to a domestic business corporation has been authorized as required by the laws of the foreign jurisdiction, articles of entity conversion shall be executed on behalf of the foreign unincorporated entity by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall:

(1) set forth the name of the unincorporated entity immediately before the filing of the articles of entity conversion and the name to which the name of the unincorporated entity is to be changed, which shall be a name that satisfies the requirements of section 4.01;

(2) set forth the jurisdiction under the laws of which the unincorporated entity was organized immediately before the filing of the articles of entity conversion and the date on which the unincorporated entity was organized in that jurisdiction;

(3) set forth a statement that the conversion of the unincorporated entity was duly approved in the manner required by its organic law; and

(4) either contain all of the provisions that section 2.02(a) requires to be set forth in articles of incorporation and any other desired provisions that section 2.02(b) permits to be included in articles of incorporation, or have attached articles of incorporation; except that, in either case, provisions that would not be required to be included in restated articles of incorporation of a domestic business corporation may be omitted.

(d) The articles of entity conversion shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing, and shall take effect at the effective time provided in section 1.23. Articles of entity conversion filed under section 9.53(a) or (b) may be combined with any required conversion filing under the organic law of the domestic unincorporated entity if the combined filing satisfies the requirements of both this section and the other organic law.

(e) If the converting entity is a foreign unincorporated entity that is authorized to transact business in this state under a provision of law similar to chapter 15, its certificate of authority or other type of foreign qualification shall be cancelled automatically on the effective date of its conversion.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(6A).

Effect of entity conversion, see § 9.55.

“Filing entity” defined, see § 1.40(9B).

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

“Organic law” defined, see § 1.40(15B).

“Public organic document” defined, see § 1.40(17B).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

“Surviving entity” defined, see § 9.50(e)(2).

“Unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(24A).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 9.54. SURRENDER OF CHARTER UPON CONVERSION

(a) Whenever a domestic business corporation has adopted and approved, in the manner required by this subchapter, a plan of entity conversion providing for the corporation to be converted to a foreign unincorporated entity, articles of charter surrender shall be executed on behalf of the corporation by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles of charter surrender shall set forth:

- (1) the name of the corporation;
- (2) a statement that the articles of charter surrender are being filed in connection with the conversion of the corporation to a foreign unincorporated entity;
- (3) a statement that the conversion was duly approved by the shareholders in the manner required by this Act and the articles of incorporation;
- (4) the jurisdiction under the laws of which the surviving entity will be organized;
- (5) if the surviving entity will be a nonfiling entity, the address of its executive office immediately after the conversion.

(b) The articles of charter surrender shall be delivered by the corporation to the secretary of state for filing. The articles of charter surrender shall take effect on the effective time provided in section 1.23.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

Effect of entity conversion, see § 9.55.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

“Nonfiling entity” defined, see § 1.40(14B).

Required approvals, see § 9.02.]

“Surviving entity” defined, see § 9.50(e)(2).

§ 9.55. EFFECT OF ENTITY CONVERSION

(a) When a conversion under this subchapter becomes effective:

- (1) the title to all real and personal property, both tangible and intangible, of the converting entity remains in the surviving entity without reversion or impairment;
- (2) the liabilities of the converting entity remain the liabilities of the surviving entity;
- (3) an action or proceeding pending against the converting entity continues against the surviving entity as if the conversion had not occurred;
- (4) in the case of a surviving entity that is a filing entity, its articles of incorporation or public organic document and its private organic document become effective;
- (5) in the case of a surviving entity that is a nonfiling entity, its private organic document becomes effective;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(6) the shares or interests of the converting entity are reclassified into shares, interests, other securities, obligations, rights to acquire shares, interests or other securities, or into cash or other property in accordance with the plan of conversion; and the shareholders or interest holders of the converting entity are entitled only to the rights provided to them under the terms of the conversion and to any appraisal rights they may have under the organic law of the converting entity; and

(7) the surviving entity is deemed to:

(i) be incorporated or organized under and subject to the organic law of the converting entity for all purposes;

(ii) be the same corporation or unincorporated entity without interruption as the converting entity; and

(iii) have been incorporated or otherwise organized on the date that the converting entity was originally incorporated or organized.

(b) When a conversion of a domestic business corporation to a foreign other entity becomes effective, the surviving entity is deemed to:

(1) appoint the secretary of state as its agent for service of process in a proceeding to enforce the rights of shareholders who exercise appraisal rights in connection with the conversion; and

(2) agree that it will promptly pay the amount, if any, to which such shareholders are entitled under chapter 13.

(c) A shareholder who becomes subject to owner liability for some or all of the debts, obligations or liabilities of the surviving entity shall be personally liable only for those debts, obligations or liabilities of the surviving entity that arise after the effective time of the articles of entity conversion.

(d) The owner liability of an interest holder in an unincorporated entity that converts to a domestic business corporation shall be as follows:

(1) The conversion does not discharge any owner liability under the organic law of the unincorporated entity to the extent any such owner liability arose before the effective time of the articles of entity conversion.

(2) The interest holder shall not have owner liability under the organic law of the unincorporated entity for any debt, obligation or liability of the corporation that arises after the effective time of the articles of entity conversion.

(3) The provisions of the organic law of the unincorporated entity shall continue to apply to the collection or discharge of any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the conversion had not occurred.

(4) The interest holder shall have whatever rights of contribution from other interest holders are provided by the organic law of the unincorporated entity with respect to any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the conversion had not occurred.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Converting entity” defined, see § 9.50(e)(1).

“Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).

“Domestic unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(6A).

“Filing entity” defined, see § 1.40(9B).

“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- “Interest” defined, see § 1.40(13A).
- “Interest holder” defined, see § 1.40(13B).
- “Nonfiling entity” defined, see § 1.40(14B).
- “Organic law” defined, see § 1.40(15B).
- “Private organic document” defined, see § 1.40(17A).
- “Public organic document” defined, see § 1.40(17B).
- “Surviving entity” defined, see § 9.50(e)(2).
- “Unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(24A).

§ 9.56. ABANDONMENT OF AN ENTITY CONVERSION

(a) Unless otherwise provided in a plan of entity conversion of a domestic business corporation, after the plan has been adopted and approved as required by this subchapter, and at any time before the entity conversion has become effective, it may be abandoned by the board of directors without action by the shareholders.

(b) If an entity conversion is abandoned after articles of entity conversion or articles of charter surrender have been filed with the secretary of state but before the entity conversion has become effective, a statement that the entity conversion has been abandoned in accordance with this section, executed by an officer or other duly authorized representative, shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing prior to the effective date of the entity conversion. Upon filing, the statement shall take effect and the entity conversion shall be deemed abandoned and shall not become effective.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Approval of entity conversion, see § 9.52.
- “Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).
- “Domestic business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(4).
- Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.
- Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 10 AMENDMENT OF ARTICLES OF INCORPORATION AND BYLAWS

Subchapter A. AMENDMENT OF ARTICLES OF INCORPORATION

- § 10.01. Authority to amend
- § 10.02. Amendment before issuance of shares
- § 10.03. Amendment by board of directors and shareholders
- § 10.04. Voting on amendments by voting groups
- § 10.05. Amendment by board of directors
- § 10.06. Articles of amendment
- § 10.07. Restated articles of incorporation
- § 10.08. Amendment pursuant to reorganization
- § 10.09. Effect of amendment

Subchapter B. AMENDMENT OF BYLAWS

- § 10.20 Amendment by board of directors or shareholders
- § 10.21 Bylaw increasing quorum or voting requirement for directors

Subchapter A. AMENDMENT OF ARTICLES OF INCORPORATION

§ 10.01. AUTHORITY TO AMEND

(a) A corporation may amend its articles of incorporation at any time to add or change a provision that is required or permitted in the articles of incorporation as of the effective date of the amendment or to delete a provision that is not required to be contained in the articles of incorporation.

(b) A shareholder of the corporation does not have a vested property right resulting from any provision in the articles of incorporation, including provisions relating to management, control, capital structure, dividend entitlement, or purpose or duration of the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment:

- before issuance of shares, see § 10.02.
- by board of directors and shareholders, see § 10.03.
- by directors, see § 10.05.
- pursuant to court reorganization, see § 10.08.

Appraisal rights, see ch.13.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.

Duration of corporation existence, see § 3.02.

Effective date of amendment, see § 1.23.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Powers of corporation, see § 3.02.
Procedure for amendment, see §§ 10.02-10.07.
Purposes of corporation, see § 3.01.
Restatement of articles, see § 10.07.
Share transfer restrictions, see § 6.27.
Voting by voting groups, see §§ 7.25, 7.26, 10.04.
“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 10.02. AMENDMENT BEFORE ISSUANCE OF SHARES

If a corporation has not yet issued shares, its board of directors, or its incorporators if it has no board of directors, may adopt one or more amendments to the corporation’s articles of incorporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of amendment, see § 10.06.
Effective date of amendment, see § 1.23.
Incorporators, see § 2.01.
Initial directors, see § 2.02.
Organization of corporation, see § 2.05.
Restated articles of incorporation, see § 10.07.

§ 10.03. AMENDMENT BY BOARD OF DIRECTORS AND SHAREHOLDERS

If a corporation has issued shares, an amendment to the articles of incorporation shall be adopted in the following manner:

- (a) The proposed amendment must be adopted by the board of directors.
- (b) Except as provided in sections 10.05, 10.07, and 10.08, after adopting the proposed amendment the board of directors must submit the amendment to the shareholders for their approval. The board of directors must also transmit to the shareholders a recommendation that the shareholders approve the amendment, unless the board of directors makes a determination that because of conflicts of interest or other special circumstances it should not make such a recommendation, in which case the board of directors must transmit to the shareholders the basis for that determination.
- (c) The board of directors may condition its submission of the amendment to the shareholders on any basis.
- (d) If the amendment is required to be approved by the shareholders, and the approval is to be given at a meeting, the corporation must notify each shareholder, whether or not entitled to vote, of the meeting of shareholders at which the amendment is to be submitted for approval. The notice must state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider the amendment and must contain or be accompanied by a copy of the amendment.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(e) Unless the articles of incorporation, or the board of directors acting pursuant to subsection (c), requires a greater vote or a greater number of shares to be present, approval of the amendment requires the approval of the shareholders at a meeting at which a quorum consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the amendment exists, and, if any class or series of shares is entitled to vote as a separate group on the amendment, except as provided in section 10.04(c), the approval of each such separate voting group at a meeting at which a quorum of the voting group consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the amendment by that voting group exists.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appraisal rights, see § 13.02.

Articles of amendment, see § 10.06.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice of shareholders’ meeting, see § 7.05.

Quorum at shareholders’ meeting, see § 7.25.

Restatement of articles of incorporation, see § 10.07.

Supermajority quorum and voting requirements, see § 7.27.

Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25, 7.26 & 10.04.

Voting entitlement of shareholders generally, see § 7.21.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 10.04. VOTING ON AMENDMENTS BY VOTING GROUPS

(a) If a corporation has more than one class of shares outstanding, the holders of the outstanding shares of a class are entitled to vote as a separate voting group (if shareholder voting is otherwise required by this Act) on a proposed amendment to the articles of incorporation if the amendment would:

(1) effect an exchange or reclassification of all or part of the shares of the class into shares of another class;

(2) effect an exchange or reclassification, or create the right of exchange, of all or part of the shares of another class into shares of the class;

(3) change the rights, preferences, or limitations of all or part of the shares of the class;

(4) change the shares of all or part of the class into a different number of shares of the same class;

(5) create a new class of shares having rights or preferences with respect to distributions or to dissolution that are prior or superior to the shares of the class;

(6) increase the rights, preferences, or number of authorized shares of any class that, after giving effect to the amendment, have rights or preferences with respect to distributions or to dissolution that are prior or superior to the shares of the class;

(7) limit or deny an existing preemptive right of all or part of the shares of the class; or

(8) cancel or otherwise affect rights to distributions that have accumulated but not yet been authorized on all or part of the shares of the class.

(b) If a proposed amendment would affect a series of a class of shares in one or more of the ways described in subsection (a), the holders of shares of that series are entitled to vote as a separate voting group on the proposed amendment.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) If a proposed amendment that entitles the holders of two or more classes or series of shares to vote as separate voting groups under this section would affect those two or more classes or series in the same or a substantially similar way, the holders of shares of all the classes or series so affected must vote together as a single voting group on the proposed amendment, unless otherwise provided in the articles of incorporation or required by the board of directors.

(d) A class or series of shares is entitled to the voting rights granted by this section although the articles of incorporation provide that the shares are nonvoting shares.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Authorized shares, see § 6.01.

Classes of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

Quorum for shareholders' meeting to amend articles, see § 10.03(e).

Series of shares, see § 6.02.

Share rights and limitations, see § 6.01.

Voting by voting groups generally, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 10.05. AMENDMENT BY BOARD OF DIRECTORS

Unless the articles of incorporation provide otherwise, a corporation's board of directors may adopt amendments to the corporation's articles of incorporation without shareholder approval:

(1) to extend the duration of the corporation if it was incorporated at a time when limited duration was required by law;

(2) to delete the names and addresses of the initial directors;

(3) to delete the name and address of the initial registered agent or registered office, if a statement of change is on file with the secretary of state;

(4) if the corporation has only one class of shares outstanding:

(a) to change each issued and unissued authorized share of the class into a greater number of whole shares of that class; or

(b) to increase the number of authorized shares of the class to the extent necessary to permit the issuance of shares as a share dividend;

(5) to change the corporate name by substituting the word “corporation,” “incorporated,” “company,” “limited,” or the abbreviation “corp.,” “inc.,” “co.,” or “ltd.,” for a similar word or abbreviation in the name, or by adding, deleting, or changing a geographical attribution for the name;

(6) to reflect a reduction in authorized shares, as a result of the operation of section 6.31(b), when the corporation has acquired its own shares and the articles of incorporation prohibit the reissue of the acquired shares;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(7) to delete a class of shares from the articles of incorporation, as a result of the operation of section 6.31(b), when there are no remaining shares of the class because the corporation has acquired all shares of the class and the articles of incorporation prohibit the reissue of the acquired shares; or

(8) to make any change expressly permitted by section 6.02(a) or (b) to be made without shareholder approval.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action by board of directors, see §§ 8.20-8.24.

Articles of amendment, see § 10.06.

Classes and series of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

Duration of corporate existence, see § 3.02.

Effective date of amendment, see § 1.23.

Extrinsic facts, see § 1.20(k)

Initial directors, see § 2.02.

Merger, see ch. 11.

Name of corporation, see ch. 4.

Reacquisition of shares, see § 6.31.

Registered office and agent, see ch. 5.

Restatement of articles, see § 10.07.

§ 10.06. ARTICLES OF AMENDMENT

After an amendment to the articles of incorporation has been adopted and approved in the manner required by this Act and by the articles of incorporation, the corporation shall deliver to the secretary of state, for filing, articles of amendment, which shall set forth:

(1) the name of the corporation;

(2) the text of each amendment adopted, or the information required by section 1.20(k)(5);

(3) if an amendment provides for an exchange, reclassification, or cancellation of issued shares, provisions for implementing the amendment if not contained in the amendment itself, (which may be made dependent upon facts objectively ascertainable outside the articles of amendment in accordance with section 1.20(k)(5);

(4) the date of each amendment's adoption; and

(5) if an amendment:

(a) was adopted by the incorporators or board of directors without shareholder approval, a statement that the amendment was duly approved by the incorporators or by the board of directors, as the case may be, and that shareholder approval was not required;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) required approval by the shareholders, a statement that the amendment was duly approved by the shareholders in the manner required by this Act and by the articles of incorporation;
or

(c) is being filed pursuant to section 1.20(k)(5), a statement to that effect.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment by:

board of directors, see § 10.05.

incorporators or initial directors, see § 10.02.

shareholders, see §§ 10.03 & 10.04.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of amendment, see § 1.23.

Extrinsic facts, see § 1.20(k).

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Merger, see ch. 11.

Share exchange, see ch. 11.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 10.07. RESTATED ARTICLES OF INCORPORATION

(a) A corporation’s board of directors may restate its articles of incorporation at any time, with or without shareholder approval, to consolidate all amendments into a single document.

(b) If the restated articles include one or more new amendments that require shareholder approval, the amendments must be adopted and approved as provided in section 10.03.

(c) A corporation that restates its articles of incorporation shall deliver to the secretary of state for filing articles of restatement setting forth the name of the corporation and the text of the restated articles of incorporation together with a certificate which states that the restated articles consolidate all amendments into a single document and, if a new amendment is included in the restated articles, which also includes the statements required under section 10.06.

(d) Duly adopted restated articles of incorporation supersede the original articles of incorporation and all amendments thereto.

(e) The secretary of state may certify restated articles of incorporation as the articles of incorporation currently in effect, without including the certificate information required by subsection (c).

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles of incorporation:

before issuance of shares, see § 10.02.

by board of directors, see § 10.05.

by board of directors and by shareholders, see § 10.03.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Certified copies, see § 1.22.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of restatement, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice of shareholders’ meeting, see § 7.05.

§ 10.08. AMENDMENT PURSUANT TO REORGANIZATION

(a) A corporation’s articles of incorporation may be amended without action by the board of directors or shareholders to carry out a plan of reorganization ordered or decreed by a court of competent jurisdiction under the authority of a law of the United States.

(b) The individual or individuals designated by the court shall deliver to the secretary of state for filing articles of amendment setting forth:

- (1) the name of the corporation;
- (2) the text of each amendment approved by the court;
- (3) the date of the court’s order or decree approving the articles of amendment;
- (4) the title of the reorganization proceeding in which the order or decree was entered; and
- (5) a statement that the court had jurisdiction of the proceeding under federal statute.

(c) This section does not apply after entry of a final decree in the reorganization proceeding even though the court retains jurisdiction of the proceeding for limited purposes unrelated to consummation of the reorganization plan.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of amendment, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 10.09. EFFECT OF AMENDMENT

An amendment to the articles of incorporation does not affect a cause of action existing against or in favor of the corporation, a proceeding to which the corporation is a party, or the existing rights of persons other than shareholders of the corporation. An amendment changing a corporation’s name does not abate a proceeding brought by or against the corporation in its former name.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment after issuance of shares, see §§ 10.03-10.05.

Amendment before issuance of shares, see § 10.05.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Delayed effective date, see § 1.23.
Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.
“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Subchapter B. AMENDMENT OF BYLAWS

§ 10.20. AMENDMENT BY BOARD OF DIRECTORS OR SHAREHOLDERS

- (a) A corporation’s shareholders may amend or repeal the corporation’s bylaws.
- (b) A corporation’s board of directors may amend or repeal the corporation’s bylaws, unless:
- (1) the articles of incorporation or section 10.21 reserve that power exclusively to the shareholders in whole or part; or
 - (2) the shareholders in amending, repealing, or adopting a bylaw expressly provide that the board of directors may not amend, repeal, or reinstate that bylaw.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Action by:

board of directors, see §§ 8.20-8.24.
shareholders, see §§ 7.01-7.04.

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see §§ 2.06 & 2.07.

Close corporations, see Model Statutory Close Corporation Supplement.

Supermajority requirements for directors, see § 10.21.

§ 10.21. BYLAW INCREASING QUORUM OR VOTING REQUIREMENT FOR DIRECTORS

- (a) A bylaw that increases a quorum or voting requirement for the board of directors may be amended or repealed:
- (1) if originally adopted by the shareholders, only by the shareholders, unless the bylaw otherwise provides;
 - (2) if adopted by the board of directors, either by the shareholders or by the board of directors.
- (b) A bylaw adopted or amended by the shareholders that increases a quorum or voting requirement for the board of directors may provide that it can be amended or repealed only by a specified vote of either the shareholders or the board of directors.
- (c) Action by the board of directors under subsection (a) to amend or repeal a bylaw that changes the quorum or voting requirement for the board of directors must meet the same quorum requirement and be adopted by the same vote required to take action under the quorum and voting requirement then in effect or proposed to be adopted, whichever is greater.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Bylaws:

amendment, see § 10.20.

generally, see § 2.06.

Quorum and voting of directors, see § 8.24.

Quorum and voting shareholders:

supermajority requirements, see § 7.27.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 11 MERGERS AND SHARE EXCHANGES

- § 11.01. Definitions
- § 11.02. Merger
- § 11.03. Share exchange
- § 11.04. Action on a plan of merger or share exchange
- § 11.05. Merger between parent and subsidiary or between subsidiaries
- § 11.06. Articles of merger or share exchange
- § 11.07. Effect of merger or share exchange
- § 11.08. Abandonment of a merger or share exchange

§ 11.01. DEFINITIONS

As used in this chapter:

- (a) “Merger” means a business combination pursuant to section 11.02.
- (b) “Party to a merger” or “party to a share exchange” means any domestic or foreign corporation or eligible entity that will:
 - (1) merge under a plan of merger;
 - (2) acquire shares or eligible interests of another corporation or an eligible entity in a share exchange; or
 - (3) have all of its shares or eligible interests or all of one or more classes or series of its shares or eligible interests acquired in a share exchange.
- (c) “Share exchange” means a business combination pursuant to section 11.03.
- (d) “Survivor” in a merger means the corporation or eligible entity into which one or more other corporations or eligible entities are merged. A survivor of a merger may preexist the merger or be created by the merger.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporation, see § 1.40.

§ 11.02. MERGER

- (a) One or more domestic business corporations may merge with one or more domestic or foreign business corporations or eligible entities pursuant to a plan of merger, or two or more foreign business corporations or domestic or foreign eligible entities may merge into a new domestic business corporation to be created in the merger in the manner provided in this chapter.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) A foreign business corporation, or a foreign eligible entity, may be a party to a merger with a domestic business corporation, or may be created by the terms of the plan of merger, only if the merger is permitted by the foreign business corporation or eligible entity.

(b.1) If the organic law of a domestic eligible entity does not provide procedures for the approval of a merger, a plan of merger may be adopted and approved, the merger effectuated, and appraisal rights exercised in accordance with the procedures in this chapter and chapter 13. For the purposes of applying this chapter and chapter 13:

(1) the eligible entity, its members or interest holders, eligible interests and organic documents taken together shall be deemed to be a domestic business corporation, shareholders, shares and articles of incorporation, respectively and vice versa as the context may require; and

(2) if the business and affairs of the eligible entity are managed by a group of persons that is not identical to the members or interest holders, that group shall be deemed to be the board of directors.

(c) The plan of merger must include:

(1) the name of each domestic or foreign business corporation or eligible entity that will merge and the name of the domestic or foreign business corporation or eligible entity that will be the survivor of the merger;

(2) the terms and conditions of the merger;

(3) the manner and basis of converting the shares of each merging domestic or foreign business corporation and eligible interests of each merging domestic or foreign eligible entity into shares or other securities, eligible interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares, other securities or eligible interests, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing;

(4) the articles of incorporation of any domestic or foreign business or nonprofit corporation, or the organic documents of any domestic or foreign unincorporated entity, to be created by the merger, or if a new domestic or foreign business or nonprofit corporation or unincorporated entity is not to be created by the merger, any amendments to the survivor's articles of incorporation or organic documents; and

(5) any other provisions required by the laws under which any party to the merger is organized or by which it is governed, or by the articles of incorporation or organic document of any such party.

(d) Terms of a plan of merger may be made dependent on facts objectively ascertainable outside the plan in accordance with section 1.20(k).

(e) The plan of merger may also include a provision that the plan may be amended prior to filing articles of merger, but if the shareholders of a domestic corporation that is a party to the merger are required or permitted to vote on the plan, the plan must provide that subsequent to approval of the plan by such shareholders the plan may not be amended to change:

(1) the amount or kind of shares or other securities, eligible interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares, other securities or eligible interests, cash, or other property to be received under the plan by the shareholders of or owners of eligible interests in any party to the merger;

(2) the articles of incorporation of any corporation, or the organic documents of any unincorporated entity, that will survive or be created as a result of the merger, except for changes permitted by section 10.05 or by comparable provisions of the organic laws of any such foreign corporation or domestic or foreign unincorporated entity; or

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(3) any of the other terms or conditions of the plan if the change would adversely affect such shareholders in any material respect.

(f) Property held in trust or for charitable purposes under the laws of this state by a domestic or foreign eligible entity shall not be diverted by a merger from the objects for which it was donated, granted or devised, unless and until the eligible entity obtains an order of [court] [the attorney general] specifying the disposition of the property to the extent required by and pursuant to [cite state statutory cy pres or other nondiversion statute].]

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of merger, see § 11.08.
Amendment of articles of incorporation, see § 11.06.
Amendment of articles by board of directors, see Section 10.05.
Appraisal rights, see ch. 13
Approval of plan, see Section 11.03.
Articles of merger, see § 11.06.
Effect of merger, see § 11.07.
“Eligible entity” defined, see § 1.40(7B).
Extrinsic facts, see § 1.20(k).
Merger between parent and subsidiary or between subsidiaries, see § 11.05.
“Other entity” defined, see § 11.01(d).
Share exchange, see § 11.03.

§ 11.03. SHARE EXCHANGE

(a) Through a share exchange:

(1) a domestic corporation may acquire all of the shares of one or more classes or series of shares of another domestic or foreign corporation, or all of the interests of one or more classes or series of interests of a domestic or foreign other entity, in exchange for shares or other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing, pursuant to a plan of share exchange, or

(2) all of the shares of one or more classes or series of shares of a domestic corporation may be acquired by another domestic or foreign corporation or other entity, in exchange for shares or other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing, pursuant to a plan of share exchange.

(b) A foreign corporation or eligible entity, may be a party to a share exchange only if the share exchange is permitted by the corporation or other entity is organized or by which it is governed.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b.1) If the organic law of a domestic other entity does not provide procedures for the approval of a share exchange, a plan of share exchange may be adopted and approved, and the share exchange effectuated, in accordance with the procedures, if any, for a merger. If the organic law of a domestic other entity does not provide procedures for the approval of either a share exchange or a merger, a plan of share exchange may be adopted and approved, the share exchange effectuated, and appraisal rights exercised, in accordance with the procedures in this chapter and chapter 13. For the purposes of applying this chapter and chapter 13:

(1) the other entity, its interest holders, interests and organic documents taken together shall be deemed to be a domestic business corporation, shareholders, shares and articles of incorporation, respectively and vice versa as the context may require; and

(2) if the business and affairs of the other entity are managed by a group of persons that is not identical to the interest holders, that group shall be deemed to be the board of directors.

(c) The plan of share exchange must include:

(1) the name of each corporation or other entity whose shares or interests will be acquired and the name of the corporation or other entity that will acquire those shares or interests;

(2) the terms and conditions of the share exchange;

(3) the manner and basis of exchanging shares of a corporation or interests in an other entity whose shares or interests will be acquired under the share exchange into shares or other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares, other securities, or interests, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing; and

(4) any other provisions required by the laws under which any party to the share exchange is organized or by the articles of incorporation or organic document of any such party.

(d) Terms of a plan of share exchange may be made dependent on facts objectively ascertainable outside the plan in accordance with section 1.20(k).

(e) The plan of share exchange may also include a provision that the plan may be amended prior to filing articles of share exchange, but if the shareholders of a domestic corporation that is a party to the share exchange are required or permitted to vote on the plan, the plan must provide that subsequent to approval of the plan by such shareholders the plan may not be amended to change:

(1) the amount or kind of shares or other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares, other securities or interests, cash, or other property to be issued by the corporation or to be received under the plan by the shareholders of or owners of interests in any party to the share exchange; or

(2) any of the other terms or conditions of the plan if the change would adversely affect such shareholders in any material respect.

(f) Section 11.03 does not limit the power of a domestic corporation to acquire shares of another corporation or interests in another entity in a transaction other than a share exchange.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of share exchange, see § 11.08.

Appraisal rights, see ch. 13.

Approval of plan, see § 11.04.

Articles of share exchange, see § 11.06.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Classes of shares, see § 6.01.
Effect of share exchange, see § 11.07.
“Eligible entity” defined, see § 1.40 (7B).
Extrinsic facts, see § 1.20(k).
“Other entity” defined, see § 11.01(d).
Series of shares, see § 6.02.

§ 11.04. ACTION ON A PLAN OF MERGER OR SHARE EXCHANGE

In the case of a domestic corporation that is a party to a merger or share exchange:

- (a) The plan of merger or share exchange must be adopted by the board of directors.
- (b) Except as provided in subsection (g) and in section 11.05, after adopting the plan of merger or share exchange the board of directors must submit the plan to the shareholders for their approval. The board of directors must also transmit to the shareholders a recommendation that the shareholders approve the plan, unless the board of directors makes a determination that because of conflicts of interest or other special circumstances it should not make such a recommendation, in which case the board of directors must transmit to the shareholders the basis for that determination.
- (c) The board of directors may condition its submission of the plan of merger or share exchange to the shareholders on any basis.
- (d) If the plan of merger or share exchange is required to be approved by the shareholders, and if the approval is to be given at a meeting, the corporation must notify each shareholder, whether or not entitled to vote, of the meeting of shareholders at which the plan is to be submitted for approval. The notice must state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider the plan and must contain or be accompanied by a copy or summary of the plan. If the corporation is to be merged into an existing corporation or other entity, the notice shall also include or be accompanied by a copy or summary of the articles of incorporation or organizational documents of that corporation or other entity. If the corporation is to be merged into a corporation or other entity that is to be created pursuant to the merger, the notice shall include or be accompanied by a copy or a summary of the articles of incorporation or organizational documents of the new corporation or other entity.
- (e) Unless the articles of incorporation, or the board of directors acting pursuant to subsection (c), requires a greater vote or a greater number of votes to be present, approval of the plan of merger or share exchange requires the approval of the shareholders at a meeting at which a quorum consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the plan exists, and, if any class or series of shares is entitled to vote as a separate group on the plan of merger or share exchange, the approval of each such separate voting group at a meeting at which a quorum of the voting group consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the merger or share exchange by that voting group is present.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(f) Separate voting by voting groups is required:

(1) on a plan of merger, by each class or series of shares that:

(i) are to be converted under the plan of merger into other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares, other securities or interests, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing; or

(ii) would be entitled to vote as a separate group on a provision in the plan that, if contained in a proposed amendment to articles of incorporation, would require action by separate voting groups under section 10.04;

(2) on a plan of share exchange, by each class or series of shares included in the exchange, with each class or series constituting a separate voting group; and

(3) on a plan of merger or share exchange, if the voting group is entitled under the articles of incorporation to vote as a voting group to approve a plan of merger or share exchange.

(g) Unless the articles of incorporation otherwise provide, approval by the corporation's shareholders of a plan of merger or share exchange is not required if:

(1) the corporation will survive the merger or is the acquiring corporation in a share exchange;

(2) except for amendments permitted by section 10.05, its articles of incorporation will not be changed;

(3) each shareholder of the corporation whose shares were outstanding immediately before the effective date of the merger or share exchange will hold the same number of shares, with identical preferences, limitations, and relative rights, immediately after the effective date of change; and

(4) the issuance in the merger or share exchange of shares or other securities convertible into or rights exercisable for shares does not require a vote under section 6.21(f).

(h) If as a result of a merger or share exchange one or more shareholders of a domestic corporation would become subject to owner liability for the debts, obligations or liabilities of any other person or entity, approval of the plan of merger or share exchange shall require the execution, by each such shareholder, of a separate written consent to become subject to such owner liability.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Abandonment of merger or share exchange, see § 11.08.

Amendment of articles by board of directors, see § 10.05.

Appraisal rights, see ch. 13.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Director standards of liability, see § 8.31.

Distributions, see §§ 1.40 & 6.40.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice of shareholders' meeting, see § 7.05.

Share issuances requiring shareholder approval, see § 6.21(f).

Supermajority quorum and voting requirements, see § 7.27.

Unanimous consent of shareholders see Section 7.04.

Voluntary share exchange, see § 11.03.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Voting by voting groups generally, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

Voting by voting group on amendment of articles of incorporation, see § 10.04.

Voting entitlement of shareholders generally, see § 7.21.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

“Voting power” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 11.05. MERGER BETWEEN PARENT AND SUBSIDIARY OR BETWEEN SUBSIDIARIES

(a) A domestic parent corporation that owns shares of a domestic or foreign subsidiary corporation that carry at least 90 percent of the voting power of each class and series of the outstanding shares of the subsidiary that have voting power may merge the subsidiary into itself or into another such subsidiary, or merge itself into the subsidiary, without the approval of the board of directors or shareholders of the subsidiary, unless the articles of incorporation of any of the corporations otherwise provide, and unless, in the case of a foreign subsidiary, approval by the subsidiary’s board of directors or shareholders is required by the laws under which the subsidiary is organized.

(b) If under subsection (a) approval of a merger by the subsidiary’s shareholders is not required, the parent corporation shall, within ten days after the effective date of the merger, notify each of the subsidiary’s shareholders that the merger has become effective.

(c) Except as provided in subsections (a) and (b), a merger between a parent and a subsidiary shall be governed by the provisions of chapter 11 applicable to mergers generally.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appraisal rights, see ch. 13.

Articles of merger, see Section 11.06.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Director standards of liability, see § 8.31.

“Voting power” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 11.06. ARTICLES OF MERGER OR SHARE EXCHANGE

(a) After a plan of merger or share exchange has been adopted and approved as required by this Act, articles of merger or share exchange shall be executed on behalf of each party to the merger or share exchange by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The articles shall set forth:

(1) the names of the parties to the merger or share exchange;

(2) if the articles of incorporation of the survivor of a merger are amended, or if a new corporation is created as a result of a merger, the amendments to the survivor’s articles of incorporation or the articles of incorporation of the new corporation;

(3) if the plan of merger or share exchange required approval by the shareholders of a domestic corporation that was a party to the merger or share exchange, a statement that the plan was duly approved by the shareholders and, if voting by any separate voting group was required, by each such separate voting group, in the manner required by this Act and the articles of incorporation;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(4) if the plan of merger or share exchange did not require approval by the shareholders of a domestic corporation that was a party to the merger or share exchange, a statement to that effect; and

(5) as to each foreign corporation or eligible entity that was a party to the merger or share exchange, a statement that the participation of the foreign corporation or eligible entity was duly authorized as required by the organic law of the corporation or eligible entity.

(b) Articles of merger or share exchange shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing by the survivor of the merger or the acquiring corporation in a share exchange, and shall take effect at the effective time provided in section 1.23. Articles of merger or share exchange filed under this section may be combined with any filing required under the organic law of any domestic eligible entity involved in the transaction if the combined filing satisfies the requirements of both this section and the other organic law.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Approval of merger or share exchange, see § 11.04.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

“Eligible entity” defined, see § 1.40(7B).

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Organic law” defined, see § 1.40(15A).

Short form merger, see § 11.05.

Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 11.07. EFFECT OF MERGER OR SHARE EXCHANGE

(a) When a merger becomes effective:

(1) the corporation or eligible entity that is designated in the plan of merger as the survivor continues or comes into existence, as the case may be;

(2) the separate existence of every corporation or eligible entity that is merged into the survivor ceases;

(3) all property owned by, and every contract right possessed by, each corporation or eligible entity that merges into the survivor is vested in the survivor without reversion or impairment;

(4) all liabilities of each corporation or eligible entity that is merged into the survivor are vested in the survivor;

(5) the name of the survivor may, but need not be, substituted in any pending proceeding for the name of any party to the merger whose separate existence ceased in the merger;

(6) the articles of incorporation or organic documents of the survivor are amended to the extent provided in the plan of merger;

(7) the articles of incorporation or organic documents of a survivor that is created by the merger become effective; and

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(8) the shares of each corporation that is a party to the merger, and the interests in an eligible entity that is a party to a merger, that are to be converted under the plan of merger into shares, eligible interests, obligations, rights to acquire securities, other securities, or eligible interests, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing, are converted, and the former holders of such shares or eligible interests are entitled only to the rights provided to them in the plan of merger or to any rights they may have under chapter 13 or the organic law of the eligible entity.

(b) When a share exchange becomes effective, the shares of each domestic corporation that are to be exchanged for shares or other securities, interests, obligations, rights to acquire shares or other securities, cash, other property, or any combination of the foregoing, are entitled only to the rights provided to them in the plan of share exchange or to any rights they may have under chapter 13.

(c) A person who becomes subject to owner liability for some or all of the debts, obligations or liabilities of any entity as a result of a merger or share exchange shall have owner liability only to the extent provided in the organic law of the entity and only for those debts, obligations and liabilities that arise after the effective time of the articles of merger or share exchange.

(d) Upon a merger becoming effective, a foreign corporation, or a foreign eligible entity, that is the survivor of the merger is deemed to:

(1) appoint the secretary of state as its agent for service of process in a proceeding to enforce the rights of shareholders of each domestic corporation that is a party to the merger who exercise appraisal rights, and

(2) agree that it will promptly pay the amount, if any, to which such shareholders are entitled under chapter 13.

(e) The effect of a merger or share exchange on the owner liability of a person who had owner liability for some or all of the debts, obligations or liabilities of a party to the merger or share exchange shall be as follows:

(1) The merger or share exchange does not discharge any owner liability under the organic law of the entity in which the person was a shareholder or interest holder to the extent any such owner liability arose before the effective time of the articles of merger or share exchange.

(2) The person shall not have owner liability under the organic law of the entity in which the person was a shareholder or interest holder prior to the merger or share exchange for any debt, obligation or liability that arises after the effective time of the articles of merger or share exchange.

(3) The provisions of the organic law of any entity for which the person had owner liability before the merger or share exchange shall continue to apply to the collection or discharge of any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the merger or share exchange had not occurred.

(4) The person shall have whatever rights of contribution from other persons are provided by the organic law of the entity for which the person had owner liability with respect to any owner liability preserved by paragraph (1), as if the merger or share exchange had not occurred.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appraisal rights, see ch. 13.

Effective time and date of merger or share exchange, see § 1.23.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Organic law” defined see Section 1.40(15B).

“Owner liability” defined see Section 1.40(15C).

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 11.08. ABANDONMENT OF A MERGER OR SHARE EXCHANGE

(a) Unless otherwise provided in a plan of merger or share exchange or in the laws under which a foreign business corporation or a domestic or foreign eligible entity that is a party to a merger or a share exchange is organized or by which it is governed, after the plan has been adopted and approved as required by this chapter, and at any time before the merger or share exchange has become effective, it may be abandoned by a domestic business corporation that is a party thereto without action by its shareholders in accordance with any procedures set forth in the plan of merger or share exchange or, if no such procedures are set forth in the plan, in the manner determined by the board of directors, subject to any contractual rights of other parties to the merger or share exchange.

(b) If a merger or share exchange is abandoned under subsection (a) after articles of merger or share exchange have been filed with the secretary of state but before the merger or share exchange has become effective, a statement that the merger or share exchange has been abandoned in accordance with this section, executed on behalf of a party to the merger or share exchange by an officer or other duly authorized representative, shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing prior to the effective date of the merger or share exchange. Upon filing, the statement shall take effect and the merger or share exchange shall be deemed abandoned and shall not become effective.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Approval of merger or share exchange, see § 11.04.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 12 DISPOSITION OF ASSETS

§ 12.01. Disposition of assets not requiring shareholder approval

§ 12.02. Shareholder approval of certain dispositions

§ 12.01. DISPOSITION OF ASSETS NOT REQUIRING SHAREHOLDER APPROVAL

No approval of the shareholders of a corporation is required, unless the articles of incorporation otherwise provide:

(1) to sell, lease, exchange, or otherwise dispose of any or all of the corporation's assets in the usual and regular course of business;

(2) to mortgage, pledge, dedicate to the repayment of indebtedness (whether with or without recourse), or otherwise encumber any or all of the corporation's assets, whether or not in the usual and regular course of business;

(3) to transfer any or all of the corporation's assets to one or more corporations or other entities all of the shares or interests of which are owned by the corporation; or

(4) to distribute assets pro rata to the holders of one or more classes or series of the corporation's shares.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02, ch. 10A.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Dissolution, see ch. 14.

"Distribution" defined, see § 1.40.

Distributions to shareholders, see § 6.40.

Shareholder approval of certain dispositions, see § 12.02.

§ 12.02. SHAREHOLDER APPROVAL OF CERTAIN DISPOSITIONS

(a) A sale, lease, exchange, or other disposition of assets, other than a disposition described in section 12.01, requires approval of the corporation's shareholders if the disposition would leave the corporation without a significant continuing business activity. If a corporation retains a business activity that represented at least 25 percent of total assets at the end of the most recently completed fiscal year, and 25 percent of either income from continuing operations before taxes or revenues from continuing operations for that fiscal year, in each case of the corporation and its subsidiaries on a consolidated basis, the corporation will conclusively be deemed to have retained a significant continuing business activity.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) A disposition that requires approval of the shareholders under subsection (a) shall be initiated by a resolution by the board of directors authorizing the disposition. After adoption of such a resolution, the board of directors shall submit the proposed disposition to the shareholders for their approval. The board of directors shall also transmit to the shareholders a recommendation that the shareholders approve the proposed disposition, unless the board of directors makes a determination that because of conflicts of interest or other special circumstances it should not make such a recommendation, in which case the board of directors shall transmit to the shareholders the basis for that determination.

(c) The board of directors may condition its submission of a disposition to the shareholders under subsection (b) on any basis.

(d) If a disposition is required to be approved by the shareholders under subsection (a), and if the approval is to be given at a meeting, the corporation shall notify each shareholder, whether or not entitled to vote, of the meeting of shareholders at which the disposition is to be submitted for approval. The notice shall state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider the disposition and shall contain a description of the disposition, including the terms and conditions thereof and the consideration to be received by the corporation.

(e) Unless the articles of incorporation or the board of directors acting pursuant to subsection (c) requires a greater vote, or a greater number of votes to be present, the approval of a disposition by the shareholders shall require the approval of the shareholders at a meeting at which a quorum consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast on the disposition exists.

(f) After a disposition has been approved by the shareholders under subsection (b), and at any time before the disposition has been consummated, it may be abandoned by the corporation without action by the shareholders, subject to any contractual rights of other parties to the disposition.

(g) A disposition of assets in the course of dissolution under chapter 14 is not governed by this section.

(h) The assets of a direct or indirect consolidated subsidiary shall be deemed the assets of the parent corporation for the purposes of this section.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appraisal rights, see ch. 13.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Disposition of assets not requiring shareholder approval, see § 12.01.

Dissolution, see ch 14.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice of shareholders’ meeting, see § 7.05.

Supermajority quorum and voting requirements, see § 7.27.

Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

Voting entitlement of shareholders generally, see § 7.21.

“Voting group” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 13 APPRAISAL RIGHTS

Subchapter A. RIGHT TO APPRAISAL AND PAYMENT FOR SHARES

- § 13.01. Definitions
- § 13.02. Right to appraisal
- § 13.03. Assertion of rights by nominees and beneficial owners

Subchapter B. PROCEDURE FOR EXERCISE OF APPRAISAL RIGHTS

- § 13.20. Notice of appraisal rights
- § 13.21. Notice of intent to demand payment
- § 13.22. Appraisal notice and form
- § 13.23. Perfection of rights; right to withdraw
- § 13.24. Payment
- § 13.25. After-acquired shares
- § 13.26. Procedure if shareholder dissatisfied with payment or offer

Subchapter C. JUDICIAL APPRAISAL OF SHARES

- § 13.30. Court action
- § 13.31. Court costs and counsel fees

Subchapter A. RIGHT TO APPRAISAL AND PAYMENT FOR SHARES

§ 13.01. DEFINITIONS

In this chapter:

(1) “Affiliate” means a person that directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries controls, is controlled by, or is under common control with another person or is a senior executive thereof. For purposes of section 13.02(b)(4), a person is deemed to be an affiliate of its senior executives.

(2) “Beneficial shareholder” means a person who is the beneficial owner of shares held in a voting trust or by a nominee on the beneficial owner’s behalf.

(3) “Corporation” means the issuer of the shares held by a shareholder demanding appraisal and, for matters covered in sections 13.22-13.31, includes the surviving entity in a merger.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(4) “Fair value” means the value of the corporation’s shares determined:
(i) immediately before the effectuation of the corporate action to which the shareholder objects;
(ii) using customary and current valuation concepts and techniques generally employed for similar businesses in the context of the transaction requiring appraisal; and
(iii) without discounting for lack of marketability or minority status except, if appropriate, for amendments to the articles pursuant to section 13.02(a)(5).

(5) “Interest” means interest from the effective date of the corporate action until the date of payment, at the rate of interest on judgments in this state on the effective date of the corporate action.

(6) “Preferred shares” means a class or series of shares whose holders have preference over any other class or series with respect to distributions.

(7) “Record shareholder” means the person in whose name shares are registered in the records of the corporation or the beneficial owner of shares to the extent of the rights granted by a nominee certificate on file with the corporation.

(8) “Senior executive” means the chief executive officer, chief operating officer, chief financial officer, and anyone in charge of a principal business unit or function.

(9) “Shareholder” means both a record shareholder and a beneficial shareholder.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Act definitions, see § 1.40.

Merger and share exchange, see ch. 11 and 11A.

§ 13.02. RIGHT TO APPRAISAL

(a) A shareholder is entitled to appraisal rights, and to obtain payment of the fair value of that shareholder’s shares, in the event of any of the following corporate actions:

(1) consummation of a merger to which the corporation is a party (i) if shareholder approval is required for the merger by section 11.04 and the shareholder is entitled to vote on the merger, except that appraisal rights shall not be available to any shareholder of the corporation with respect to shares of any class or series that remain outstanding after consummation of the merger, or (ii) if the corporation is a subsidiary and the merger is governed by section 11.05;

(2) consummation of a share exchange to which the corporation is a party as the corporation whose shares will be acquired if the shareholder is entitled to vote on the exchange, except that appraisal rights shall not be available to any shareholder of the corporation with respect to any class or series of shares of the corporation that is not exchanged;

(3) consummation of a disposition of assets pursuant to section 12.02 if the shareholder is entitled to vote on the disposition;

(4) an amendment of the articles of incorporation with respect to a class or series of shares that reduces the number of shares of a class or series owned by the shareholder to a fraction of a share if the corporation has the obligation or right to repurchase the fractional share so created;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(5) any other amendment to the articles of incorporation, merger, share exchange or disposition of assets to the extent provided by the articles of incorporation, bylaws or a resolution of the board of directors;

(6) consummation of a domestication if the shareholder does not receive shares in the foreign corporation resulting from the domestication that have terms as favorable to the shareholder in all material respects, and represent at least the same percentage interest of the total voting rights of the outstanding shares of the corporation, as the shares held by the shareholder before the domestication;

(7) consummation of a conversion of the corporation to nonprofit status pursuant to subchapter 9C; or

(8) consummation of a conversion of the corporation to an unincorporated entity pursuant to subchapter 9E.

(b) Notwithstanding subsection (a), the availability of appraisal rights under subsections (a)(1), (2), (3), (4), (6) and (8) shall be limited in accordance with the following provisions:

(1) Appraisal rights shall not be available for the holders of shares of any class or series of shares which is:

(i) listed on the New York Stock Exchange or the American Stock Exchange or designated as a national market system security on an interdealer quotation system by the National Association of Securities Dealers, Inc.; or

(ii) not so listed or designated, but has at least 2,000 shareholders and the outstanding shares of such class or series has a market value of at least \$20 million (exclusive of the value of such shares held by its subsidiaries, senior executives, directors and beneficial shareholders owning more than 10 percent of such shares).

(2) The applicability of subsection (b)(1) shall be determined as of:

(i) the record date fixed to determine the shareholders entitled to receive notice of, and to vote at, the meeting of shareholders to act upon the corporate action requiring appraisal rights; or

(ii) the day before the effective date of such corporate action if there is no meeting of shareholders.

(3) Subsection (b)(1) shall not be applicable and appraisal rights shall be available pursuant to subsection (a) for the holders of any class or series of shares who are required by the terms of the corporate action requiring appraisal rights to accept for such shares anything other than cash or shares of any class or any series of shares of any corporation, or any other proprietary interest of any other entity, that satisfies the standards set forth in subsection (b)(1) at the time the corporate action becomes effective.

(4) Subsection (b)(1) shall not be applicable and appraisal rights shall be available pursuant to subsection (a) for the holders of any class or series of shares where:

(i) any of the shares or assets of the corporation are being acquired or converted, whether by merger, share exchange or otherwise, pursuant to the corporate action by a person, or by an affiliate of a person, who:

(A) is, or at any time in the one-year period immediately preceding approval by the board of directors of the corporate action requiring appraisal rights was, the beneficial owner of 20 percent or more of the voting power of the corporation, excluding any shares acquired pursuant to an offer for all shares having voting power if such offer was made within one year prior to the corporate action requiring appraisal rights for consideration of the same kind and of a value equal to or less than that paid in connection with the corporate action; or

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(B) directly or indirectly has, or at any time in the one-year period immediately preceding approval by the board of directors of the corporation of the corporate action requiring appraisal rights had, the power, contractually or otherwise, to cause the appointment or election of 25 percent or more of the directors to the board of directors of the corporation; or

(ii) any of the shares or assets of the corporation are being acquired or converted, whether by merger, share exchange or otherwise, pursuant to such corporate action by a person, or by an affiliate of a person, who is, or at any time in the one-year period immediately preceding approval by the board of directors of the corporate action requiring appraisal rights was, a senior executive or director of the corporation or a senior executive of any affiliate thereof, and that senior executive or director will receive, as a result of the corporate action, a financial benefit not generally available to other shareholders as such, other than:

(A) employment, consulting, retirement or similar benefits established separately and not as part of or in contemplation of the corporate action; or

(B) employment, consulting, retirement or similar benefits established in contemplation of, or as part of, the corporate action that are not more favorable than those existing before the corporate action or, if more favorable, that have been approved on behalf of the corporation in the same manner as is provided in section 8.62; or

(C) in the case of a director of the corporation who will, in the corporate action, become a director of the acquiring entity in the corporate action or one of its affiliates, rights and benefits as a director that are provided on the same basis as those afforded by the acquiring entity generally to other directors of such entity or such affiliate.

(5) For the purposes of paragraph (4) only, the term “beneficial owner” means any person who, directly or indirectly, through any contract, arrangement, or understanding, other than a revocable proxy, has or shares the power to vote, or to direct the voting of, shares, provided that a member of a national securities exchange shall not be deemed to be a beneficial owner of securities held directly or indirectly by it on behalf of another person solely because such member is the record holder of such securities if the member is precluded by the rules of such exchange from voting without instruction on contested matters or matters that may affect substantially the rights or privileges of the holders of the securities to be voted. When two or more persons agree to act together for the purpose of voting their shares of the corporation, each member of the group formed thereby shall be deemed to have acquired beneficial ownership, as of the date of such agreement, of all voting shares of the corporation beneficially owned by any member of the group.

(c) Notwithstanding any other provision of section 13.02, the articles of incorporation as originally filed or any amendment thereto may limit or eliminate appraisal rights for any class or series of preferred shares, but any such limitation or elimination contained in an amendment to the articles of incorporation that limits or eliminates appraisal rights for any of such shares that are outstanding immediately prior to the effective date of such amendment or that the corporation is or may be required to issue or sell thereafter pursuant to any conversion, exchange or other right existing immediately before the effective date of such amendment shall not apply to any corporate action that becomes effective within one year of that date if such action would otherwise afford appraisal rights.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) A shareholder may not challenge a completed corporate action described in subsection (a), other than those subscribed in subsection (b)(3) and (4), unless such corporate action:

(1) was not effectuated in accordance with the applicable provisions of chapters 9, 10, 11 or 12 or the corporation's articles of incorporation, bylaws or board of directors' resolution authorizing the corporate action; or

(2) was procured as a result of fraud or material misrepresentation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amendment of articles of incorporation, see ch. 10A.

Bylaws, see § 2.05, ch. 10B.

Disposition of assets, see ch. 12.

Domestication, see § 9.24.

Entity conversion, see § 9.52.

Fractional shares, see § 6.04.

Merger and share exchange, see ch. 11.

Merger of subsidiary, see § 11.05.

Nonprofit conversion, see § 9.34.

"Person" defined, see § 1.40.

Redemption of shares, see §§ 6.01 & 6.31.

Share dividends, see § 6.23.

Share preferences, see §§ 6.01 & 6.02.

"Voting power" defined, see § 1.40.

Voting rights generally, see § 7.21.

§ 13.03. ASSERTION OF RIGHTS BY NOMINEES AND BENEFICIAL OWNERS

(a) A record shareholder may assert appraisal rights as to fewer than all the shares registered in the record shareholder's name but owned by a beneficial shareholder only if the record shareholder objects with respect to all shares of the class or series owned by the beneficial shareholder and notifies the corporation in writing of the name and address of each beneficial shareholder on whose behalf appraisal rights are being asserted. The rights of a record shareholder who asserts appraisal rights for only part of the shares held of record in the record shareholder's name under this subsection shall be determined as if the shares as to which the record shareholder objects and the record shareholder's other shares were registered in the names of different record shareholders.

(b) A beneficial shareholder may assert appraisal rights as to shares of any class or series held on behalf of the shareholder only if such shareholder:

(1) submits to the corporation the record shareholder's written consent to the assertion of such rights no later than the date referred to in section 13.22(b)(2)(ii); and

(2) does so with respect to all shares of the class or series that are beneficially owned by the beneficial shareholder.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Beneficial shareholder” defined, see § 13.01.
Notice to the corporation, see § 1.41.
“Person” defined, see § 1.40.
“Record shareholder” defined, see § 13.01.
“Shareholder” defined, see §§ 1.40 & 13.01.
Shares held by nominee, see § 7.23.
Voting agreements, see § 7.31.
Voting trusts, see § 7.30.

Subchapter B.

PROCEDURE FOR EXERCISE OF APPRAISAL RIGHTS

§ 13.20. NOTICE OF APPRAISAL RIGHTS

(a) If proposed corporate action described in section 13.02(a) is to be submitted to a vote at a shareholders’ meeting, the meeting notice must state that the corporation has concluded that shareholders are, are not or may be entitled to assert appraisal rights under this chapter. If the corporation concludes that appraisal rights are or may be available, a copy of this chapter must accompany the meeting notice sent to those record shareholders entitled to exercise appraisal rights.

(b) In a merger pursuant to section 11.05, the parent corporation must notify in writing all record shareholders of the subsidiary who are entitled to assert appraisal rights that the corporate action became effective. Such notice must be sent within ten days after the corporate action became effective and include the materials described in section 13.22.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Meeting notice, see § 7.05.
Merger of subsidiary, see § 11.05.
“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.
“Record shareholder” defined, see § 13.01.
Right to appraisal rights, see § 13.02.
“Shareholder” defined, see § 13.01.
Shareholders’ meetings, see §§ 7.01-7.03.

§ 13.21. NOTICE OF INTENT TO DEMAND PAYMENT

(a) If proposed corporate action requiring appraisal rights under section 13.02 is submitted to a vote at a shareholders’ meeting, a shareholder who wishes to assert appraisal rights with respect to any class or series of shares:

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (1) must deliver to the corporation before the vote is taken written notice of the shareholder's intent to demand payment if the proposed action is effectuated; and
- (2) must not vote, or cause or permit to be voted, any shares of such class or series in favor of the proposed action.

(b) A shareholder who does not satisfy the requirements of subsection (a) is not entitled to payment under this chapter.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appraisal rights as exclusive remedy, see § 13.02.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

§ 13.22. APPRAISAL NOTICE AND FORM

(a) If proposed corporate action requiring appraisal rights under section 13.02(a) becomes effective, the corporation must deliver a written appraisal notice and form required by subsection (b)(1) to all shareholders who satisfied the requirements of section 13.21. In the case of a merger under section 11.05, the parent must deliver a written appraisal notice and form to all record shareholders who may be entitled to assert appraisal rights.

(b) The appraisal notice must be sent no earlier than the date the corporate action became effective and no later than ten days after such date and must:

(1) supply a form that specifies the date of the first announcement to shareholders of the principal terms of the proposed corporate action and requires the shareholder asserting appraisal rights to certify (i) whether or not beneficial ownership of those shares for which appraisal rights are asserted was acquired before that date and (ii) that the shareholder did not vote for the transaction;

(2) state:

(i) where the form must be sent and where certificates for certificated shares must be deposited and the date by which those certificates must be deposited, which date may not be earlier than the date for receiving the required form under subsection (2)(ii);

(ii) a date by which the corporation must receive the form which date may not be fewer than 40 nor more than 60 days after the date the subsection (a) appraisal notice and form are sent, and state that the shareholder shall have waived the right to demand appraisal with respect to the shares unless the form is received by the corporation by such specified date;

(iii) the corporation's estimate of the fair value of the shares;

(iv) that, if requested in writing, the corporation will provide, to the shareholder so requesting, within ten days after the date specified in subsection (2)(ii) the number of shareholders who return the forms by the specified date and the total number of shares owned by them; and

(v) the date by which the notice to withdraw under section 13.23 must be received, which date must be within 20 days after the date specified in subsection (2)(ii); and

(3) be accompanied by a copy of this chapter.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

After-acquired shares, see § 13.25.
Certificateless shares, see § 6.26.
“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40.
Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.
Merger of subsidiary, see § 11.05.
“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

§ 13.23. PERFECTION OF RIGHTS; RIGHT TO WITHDRAW

(a) A shareholder who receives notice pursuant to section 13.22 and who wishes to exercise appraisal rights must certify on the form sent by the corporation whether the beneficial owner of such shares acquired beneficial ownership of the shares before the date required to be set forth in the notice pursuant to section 13.22(b)(1). If a shareholder fails to make this certification, the corporation may elect to treat the shareholder’s shares as after-acquired shares under section 13.25. In addition, a shareholder who wishes to exercise appraisal rights must execute and return the form and, in the case of certificated shares, deposit the shareholder’s certificates in accordance with the terms of the notice by the date referred to in the notice pursuant to section 13.22(b)(2)(ii). Once a shareholder deposits that shareholder’s certificates or, in the case of uncertificated shares, returns the executed forms, that shareholder loses all rights as a shareholder, unless the shareholder withdraws pursuant to subsection (b).

(b) A shareholder who has complied with subsection (a) may nevertheless decline to exercise appraisal rights and withdraw from the appraisal process by so notifying the corporation in writing by the date set forth in the appraisal notice pursuant to section 13.22(b)(2)(v). A shareholder who fails to so withdraw from the appraisal process may not thereafter withdraw without the corporation’s written consent.

(c) A shareholder who does not execute and return the form and, in the case of certificated shares, deposit that shareholder’s share certificates where required, each by the date set forth in the notice described in section 13.22(b), shall not be entitled to payment under this chapter.

CROSS-REFERENCES

After-acquired shares, see § 13.25.
Appraisal notice, see § 13.22.
Appraisal rights as exclusive remedy, see § 13.02.
Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

§ 13.24. PAYMENT

(a) Except as provided in section 13.25, within 30 days after the form required by section 13.22(b)(2)(ii) is due, the corporation shall pay in cash to those shareholders who complied with section 13.23(a) the amount the corporation estimates to be the fair value of their shares, plus interest.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The payment to each shareholder pursuant to subsection (a) must be accompanied by:

(1) financial statements of the corporation that issued the shares to be appraised, consisting of a balance sheet as of the end of a fiscal year ending not more than 16 months before the date of payment, an income statement for that year, a statement of changes in shareholders' equity for that year, and the latest available interim financial statements, if any;

(2) a statement of the corporation's estimate of the fair value of the shares, which estimate must equal or exceed the corporation's estimate given pursuant to section 13.22(b)(2)(iii);

(3) a statement that shareholders described in subsection (a) have the right to demand further payment under section 13.26 and that if any such shareholder does not do so within the time period specified therein, such shareholder shall be deemed to have accepted such payment in full satisfaction of the corporation's obligations under this chapter.

CROSS-REFERENCES

After-acquired shares, see § 13.25.

"Fair value" defined, see § 13.01.

"Interest" defined, see § 13.01.

Notice, see § 13.22.

Payment demand, see § 13.23.

Rejection of corporation's estimate of fair value, see § 13.26.

§ 13.25. AFTER-ACQUIRED SHARES

(a) A corporation may elect to withhold payment required by section 13.24 from any shareholder who did not certify that beneficial ownership of all of the shareholder's shares for which appraisal rights are asserted was acquired before the date set forth in the appraisal notice sent pursuant to section 13.22(b)(1).

(b) If the corporation elected to withhold payment under subsection (a), it must, within 30 days after the form required by section 13.22(b)(2)(ii) is due, notify all shareholders who are described in subsection (a):

(1) of the information required by section 13.24(b)(1);

(2) of the corporation's estimate of fair value pursuant to section 13.24(b)(2);

(3) that they may accept the corporation's estimate of fair value, plus interest, in full satisfaction of their demands or demand appraisal under section 13.26;

(4) that those shareholders who wish to accept such offer must so notify the corporation of their acceptance of the corporation's offer within 30 days after receiving the offer; and

(5) that those shareholders who do not satisfy the requirements for demanding appraisal under section 13.26 shall be deemed to have accepted the corporation's offer.

(c) Within ten days after receiving the shareholder's acceptance pursuant to subsection (b), the corporation must pay in cash the amount it offered under subsection (b)(2) to each shareholder who agreed to accept the corporation's offer in full satisfaction of the shareholder's demand.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) Within 40 days after sending the notice described in subsection (b), the corporation must pay in cash the amount it offered to pay under subsection (b)(2) to each shareholder described in subsection (b)(5).

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Fair value” defined, see § 13.01.

“Interest” defined, see § 13.01.

Rejection of corporation’s offer, see § 13.26.

§ 13.26. PROCEDURE IF SHAREHOLDER DISSATISFIED WITH PAYMENT OR OFFER

(a) A shareholder paid pursuant to section 13.24 who is dissatisfied with the amount of the payment must notify the corporation in writing of that shareholder’s estimate of the fair value of the shares and demand payment of that estimate plus interest (less any payment under section 13.24). A shareholder offered payment under section 13.25 who is dissatisfied with that offer must reject the offer and demand payment of the shareholder’s stated estimate of the fair value of the shares plus interest.

(b) A shareholder who fails to notify the corporation in writing of that shareholder’s demand to be paid the shareholder’s stated estimate of the fair value plus interest under subsection (a) within 30 days after receiving the corporation’s payment or offer of payment under section 13.24 or section 13.25, respectively, waives the right to demand payment under this section and shall be entitled only to the payment made or offered pursuant to those respective sections.

CROSS-REFERENCES

After-acquired shares, see § 13.25.

Appraisal rights as exclusive remedy, see § 13.02.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

“Fair value” defined, see § 13.01.

“Interest” defined, see § 13.01.

Judicial appraisal, see § 13.30.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Offer of payment for after-acquired shares, see § 13.25.

Payment for shares, see § 13.24.

Subchapter C.

JUDICIAL APPRAISAL OF SHARES

§ 13.30. COURT ACTION

(a) If a shareholder makes demand for payment under section 13.26 which remains unsettled, the corporation shall commence a proceeding within 60 days after receiving the payment demand and

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

petition the court to determine the fair value of the shares and accrued interest. If the corporation does not commence the proceeding within the 60-day period, it shall pay in cash to each shareholder the amount the shareholder demanded pursuant to section 13.26 plus interest.

(b) The corporation shall commence the proceeding in the appropriate court of the county where the corporation's principal office (or, if none, its registered office) in this state is located. If the corporation is a foreign corporation without a registered office in this state, it shall commence the proceeding in the county in this state where the principal office or registered office of the domestic corporation merged with the foreign corporation was located at the time of the transaction.

(c) The corporation shall make all shareholders (whether or not residents of this state) whose demands remain unsettled parties to the proceeding as in an action against their shares, and all parties must be served with a copy of the petition. Nonresidents may be served by registered or certified mail or by publication as provided by law.

(d) The jurisdiction of the court in which the proceeding is commenced under subsection (b) is plenary and exclusive. The court may appoint one or more persons as appraisers to receive evidence and recommend a decision on the question of fair value. The appraisers shall have the powers described in the order appointing them, or in any amendment to it. The shareholders demanding appraisal rights are entitled to the same discovery rights as parties in other civil proceedings. There shall be no right to a jury trial.

(e) Each shareholder made a party to the proceeding is entitled to judgment (i) for the amount, if any, by which the court finds the fair value of the shareholder's shares, plus interest, exceeds the amount paid by the corporation to the shareholder for such shares or (ii) for the fair value, plus interest, of the shareholder's shares for which the corporation elected to withhold payment under section 13.25.

CROSS-REFERENCES

After-acquired shares, see § 13.25.

"Fair value" defined, see § 13.01.

"Interest" defined, see § 13.01.

"Person" defined, see § 1.40.

"Principal office":

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

"Proceeding" defined, see § 1.40.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

§ 13.31. COURT COSTS AND COUNSEL FEES

(a) The court in an appraisal proceeding commenced under section 13.30 shall determine all costs of the proceeding, including the reasonable compensation and expenses of appraisers appointed by the court. The court shall assess the costs against the corporation, except that the court may assess costs

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

against all or some of the shareholders demanding appraisal, in amounts the court finds equitable, to the extent the court finds such shareholders acted arbitrarily, vexatiously, or not in good faith with respect to the rights provided by this chapter.

(b) The court in an appraisal proceeding may also assess the fees and expenses of counsel and experts for the respective parties, in amounts the court finds equitable:

(1) against the corporation and in favor of any or all shareholders demanding appraisal if the court finds the corporation did not substantially comply with the requirements of sections 13.20, 13.22, 13.24 or 13.25; or

(2) against either the corporation or a shareholder demanding appraisal, in favor of any other party, if the court finds that the party against whom the fees and expenses are assessed acted arbitrarily, vexatiously, or not in good faith with respect to the rights provided by this chapter.

(c) If the court in an appraisal proceeding finds that the services of counsel for any shareholder were of substantial benefit to other shareholders similarly situated, and that the fees for those services should not be assessed against the corporation, the court may award to such counsel reasonable fees to be paid out of the amounts awarded the shareholders who were benefitted.

(d) To the extent the corporation fails to make a required payment pursuant to sections 13.24, 13.25, or 13.26, the shareholder may sue directly for the amount owed and, to the extent successful, shall be entitled to recover from the corporation all costs and expenses of the suit, including counsel fees.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appraisers, see § 13.30.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 14 DISSOLUTION

Subchapter A. VOLUNTARY DISSOLUTION

- § 14.01. Dissolution by incorporators or initial directors
- § 14.02. Dissolution by board of directors and shareholders
- § 14.03. Articles of dissolution
- § 14.04. Revocation of dissolution
- § 14.05. Effect of dissolution
- § 14.06. Known claims against dissolved corporation
- § 14.07. Other claims against dissolved corporation
- § 14.08. Court proceedings
- § 14.09. Director duties

Subchapter B. ADMINISTRATIVE DISSOLUTION

- § 14.20. Grounds for administrative dissolution
- § 14.21. Procedure for and effect of administrative dissolution
- § 14.22. Reinstatement following administrative dissolution
- § 14.23. Appeal from denial of reinstatement

Subchapter C. JUDICIAL DISSOLUTION

- § 14.30. Grounds for judicial dissolution
- § 14.31. Procedure for judicial dissolution
- § 14.32. Receivership or custodianship
- § 14.33. Decree of dissolution
- § 14.34. Election to purchase in lieu of dissolution

Subchapter D. MISCELLANEOUS

- § 14.40. Deposit with state treasurer

Subchapter A. VOLUNTARY DISSOLUTION

§ 14.01. DISSOLUTION BY INCORPORATORS OR INITIAL DIRECTORS

A majority of the incorporators or initial directors of a corporation that has not issued shares or has not commenced business may dissolve the corporation by delivering to the secretary of state of state for filing articles of dissolution that set forth:

- (1) the name of the corporation;
- (2) the date of its incorporation;
- (3) either (i) that none of the corporation's shares has been issued or (ii) that the corporation has not commenced business;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (4) that no debt of the corporation remains unpaid;
- (5) that the net assets of the corporation remaining after winding up have been distributed to the shareholders, if shares were issued; and
- (6) that a majority of the incorporators or initial directors authorized the dissolution.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Claims against dissolved corporation, see §§ 14.06 & 14.07.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Dissolution by board of directors and shareholders, see § 14.02.

Effective date of dissolution, see § 14.03.

Effect of dissolution, see § 14.05.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Incorporators, see § 2.01.

Initial directors, see § 2.05.

Revocation of dissolution, see § 14.04.

§ 14.02. DISSOLUTION BY BOARD OF DIRECTORS AND SHAREHOLDERS

(a) A corporation’s board of directors may propose dissolution for submission to the shareholders.

(b) For a proposal to dissolve to be adopted:

(1) the board of directors must recommend dissolution to the shareholders unless the board of directors determines that because of conflict of interest or other special circumstances it should make no recommendation and communicates the basis for its determination to the shareholders; and

(2) the shareholders entitled to vote must approve the proposal to dissolve as provided in subsection (e).

(c) The board of directors may condition its submission of the proposal for dissolution on any basis.

(d) The corporation shall notify each shareholder, whether or not entitled to vote, of the proposed shareholders’ meeting. The notice must also state that the purpose, or one of the purposes, of the meeting is to consider dissolving the corporation.

(e) Unless the articles of incorporation or the board of directors acting pursuant to subsection (c) require a greater vote, a greater number of shares to be present, or a vote by voting groups, adoption of the proposal to dissolve shall require the approval of the shareholders at a meeting at which a quorum consisting of at least a majority of the votes entitled to be cast exists.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

Dissolution by unanimous consent of shareholders, see § 7.04.

Effect of dissolution, see § 14.05.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice of shareholders’ meeting, see § 7.05.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Quorum at shareholders' meeting, see § 7.25.
Revocation of dissolution, see § 14.04.
Supermajority quorum and voting requirements, see § 7.27.
Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.
Voting entitlement of shareholders generally, see § 7.21.
"Voting group" defined, see § 1.40.

§ 14.03. ARTICLES OF DISSOLUTION

- (a) At any time after dissolution is authorized, the corporation may dissolve by delivering to the secretary of state for filing articles of dissolution setting forth:
- (1) the name of the corporation;
 - (2) the date dissolution was authorized; and
 - (3) if dissolution was approved by the shareholders, a statement that the proposal to dissolve was duly approved by the shareholders in the manner required by this Act and by the articles of incorporation.
- (b) A corporation is dissolved upon the effective date of its articles of dissolution.
- (c) For purposes of this subchapter, "dissolved corporation" means a corporation whose articles of dissolution have become effective and includes a successor entity to which the remaining assets of the corporation are transferred subject to its liabilities for purposes of liquidation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

"Deliver," see § 1.40.
Dissolution by board of directors and shareholders, see § 14.02.
Dissolution by unanimous consent of shareholders, see § 7.04.
Effect of dissolution, see § 14.05.
Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.
Filing fees, see § 1.22.
Filing requirements, see § 1.20.
Revocation of dissolution, see § 14.04.
Voting by voting group, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.
"Voting group" defined, see § 1.40.

§ 14.04. REVOCATION OF DISSOLUTION

- (a) A corporation may revoke its dissolution within 120 days of its effective date.
- (b) Revocation of dissolution must be authorized in the same manner as the dissolution was authorized unless that authorization permitted revocation by action of the board of directors alone, in which event the board of directors may revoke the dissolution without shareholder action.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) After the revocation of dissolution is authorized, the corporation may revoke the dissolution by delivering to the secretary of state for filing articles of revocation of dissolution, together with a copy of its articles of dissolution, that set forth:

- (1) the name of the corporation;
- (2) the effective date of the dissolution that was revoked;
- (3) the date that the revocation of dissolution was authorized;
- (4) if the corporation's board of directors (or incorporators) revoked the dissolution, a statement to that effect;
- (5) if the corporation's board of directors revoked a dissolution authorized by the shareholders, a statement that revocation was permitted by action by the board of directors alone pursuant to that authorization; and
- (6) if shareholder action was required to revoke the dissolution, the information required by section 14.03(a) (3).

(d) Revocation of dissolution is effective upon the effective date of the articles of revocation of dissolution.

(e) When the revocation of dissolution is effective, it relates back to and takes effect as of the effective date of the dissolution and the corporation resumes carrying on its business as if dissolution had never occurred.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of dissolution, see § 14.03.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Dissolution by:

board of directors and shareholders, see § 14.02.

incorporators or initial directors, see § 14.01.

unanimous consent of shareholders, see § 7.04.

Effective date of dissolution, see § 14.03.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

§ 14.05. EFFECT OF DISSOLUTION

(a) A dissolved corporation continues its corporate existence but may not carry on any business except that appropriate to wind up and liquidate its business and affairs, including:

- (1) collecting its assets;
- (2) disposing of its properties that will not be distributed in kind to its shareholders;
- (3) discharging or making provision for discharging its liabilities;
- (4) distributing its remaining property among its shareholders according to their interests; and
- (5) doing every other act necessary to wind up and liquidate its business and affairs.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) Dissolution of a corporation does not:

- (1) transfer title to the corporation's property;
- (2) prevent transfer of its shares or securities, although the authorization to dissolve may provide for closing the corporation's share transfer records;
- (3) subject its directors or officers to standards of conduct different from those prescribed in chapter 8;
- (4) change quorum or voting requirements for its board of directors or shareholders; change provisions for selection, resignation, or removal of its directors or officers or both; or change provisions for amending its bylaws;
- (5) prevent commencement of a proceeding by or against the corporation in its corporate name;
- (6) abate or suspend a proceeding pending by or against the corporation on the effective date of dissolution; or
- (7) terminate the authority of the registered agent of the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Administrative dissolution, see §§ 14.20-14.23.

Amendment of bylaws, see ch. 10B.

Claims against dissolved corporation, see §§ 14.06 & 14.07.

Deposit with state treasurer, see § 14.33.

Directors:

election, see § 8.03.

removal, see §§ 8.08 & 8.09.

resignation, see § 8.07.

standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

terms, see § 8.05.

Dissolution by:

board of directors and shareholders, see § 14.02.

incorporators or initial directors, see § 14.01.

"Dissolved corporation," see § 14.03.

Distribution, see § 6.40.

Effective date of dissolution, see § 14.03.

Judicial dissolution, see §§ 14.30-14.33.

Officers:

appointment, see § 8.40.

removal, see § 8.43.

resignation, see § 8.43.

standards of conduct, see § 8.42.

"Proceeding" defined, see § 1.40.

Quorum requirements:

board of directors, see § 8.24.

shareholders, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Revocation of dissolution, see § 14.04.

Service of process on registered agent, see § 5.04.

Voting requirements:

directors, see § 8.24.

shareholders, see §§ 7.25 & 7.26.

§ 14.06. KNOWN CLAIMS AGAINST DISSOLVED CORPORATION

(a) A dissolved corporation may dispose of the known claims against it by notifying its known claimants in writing of the dissolution at any time after its effective date.

(b) The written notice must:

(1) describe information that must be included in a claim;

(2) provide a mailing address where a claim may be sent;

(3) state the deadline, which may not be fewer than 120 days from the effective date of the written notice, by which the dissolved corporation must receive the claim; and

(4) state that the claim will be barred if not received by the deadline.

(c) A claim against the dissolved corporation is barred:

(1) if a claimant who was given written notice under subsection (b) does not deliver the claim to the dissolved corporation by the deadline; or

(2) if a claimant whose claim was rejected by the dissolved corporation does not commence a proceeding to enforce the claim within 90 days from the effective date of the rejection notice.

(d) For purposes of this section, “claim” does not include a contingent liability or a claim based on an event occurring after the effective date of dissolution.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Administrative dissolution, see § 14.21.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Dissolved corporation, see § 14.03.

Distributions, see §§ 6.40 & 8.33.

Effective date of dissolution, see § 14.03.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

Judicial dissolution, see § 14.32.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice to the corporation, see § 1.41.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Unknown claims, see § 14.07.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 14.07. OTHER CLAIMS AGAINST DISSOLVED CORPORATION

(a) A dissolved corporation may also publish notice of its dissolution and request that persons with claims against the dissolved corporation present them in accordance with the notice.

(b) The notice must:

(1) be published one time in a newspaper of general circulation in the county where the dissolved corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is or was last located;

(2) describe the information that must be included in a claim and provide a mailing address where the claim may be sent; and

(3) state that a claim against the dissolved corporation will be barred unless a proceeding to enforce the claim is commenced within three years after the publication of the notice.

(c) If the dissolved corporation publishes a newspaper notice in accordance with subsection (b), the claim of each of the following claimants is barred unless the claimant commences a proceeding to enforce the claim against the dissolved corporation within three years after the publication date of the newspaper notice:

(1) a claimant who was not given written notice under section 14.06;

(2) a claimant whose claim was timely sent to the dissolved corporation but not acted on;

(3) a claimant whose claim is contingent or based on an event occurring after the effective date of dissolution.

(d) A claim that is not barred by section 14.06(b) or section 14.07(c) may be enforced:

(1) against the dissolved corporation, to the extent of its undistributed assets; or

(2) except as provided in section 14.08(d), if the assets have been distributed in liquidation, against a shareholder of the dissolved corporation to the extent of the shareholder's pro rata share of the claim or the corporate assets distributed to the shareholder in liquidation, whichever is less, but a shareholder's total liability for all claims under this section may not exceed the total amount of assets distributed to the shareholder.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Administrative dissolution, see § 14.21.

"Claim" defined, see § 14.06.

"Deliver," see § 1.40.

"Dissolved corporation," see § 14.03.

Distributions, see §§ 6.40 & 8.33.

Effective date of dissolution, see § 14.03.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

Judicial dissolution, see § 14.32.

Known claims, see § 14.06.

"Notice" defined, see § 1.41.

Notice to the corporation, see § 1.41.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

§ 14.08. COURT PROCEEDINGS

(a) A dissolved corporation that has published a notice under section 14.07 may file an application with the \[name or describe\] court of the county where the dissolved corporation’s principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is located for a determination of the amount and form of security to be provided for payment of claims that are contingent or have not been made known to the dissolved corporation or that are based on an event occurring after the effective date of dissolution but that, based on the facts known to the dissolved corporation, are reasonably estimated to arise after the effective date of dissolution. Provision need not be made for any claim that is or is reasonably anticipated to be barred under section 14.07(c).

(b) Within 10 days after the filing of the application, notice of the proceeding shall be given by the dissolved corporation to each claimant holding a contingent claim whose contingent claim is shown on the records of the dissolved corporation.

(c) The court may appoint a guardian ad litem to represent all claimants whose identities are unknown in any proceeding brought under this section. The reasonable fees and expenses of such guardian, including all reasonable expert witness fees, shall be paid by the dissolved corporation.

(d) Provision by the dissolved corporation for security in the amount and the form ordered by the court under section 14.08(a) shall satisfy the dissolved corporation’s obligations with respect to claims that are contingent, have not been made known to the dissolved corporation or are based on an event occurring after the effective date of dissolution, and such claims may not be enforced against a shareholder who received assets in liquidation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Dissolved corporation” defined, see § 14.03

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41

Notice” defined, see § 1.41

Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40

designated in annual report, see § 16.21

Proceeding” defined, see § 1.41

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 14.09. DIRECTOR DUTIES

(a) Directors shall cause the dissolved corporation to discharge or make reasonable provision for the payment of claims and make distributions of assets to shareholders after payment or provision for claims.

(b) Directors of a dissolved corporation which has disposed of claims under sections 14.06, 14.07, or 14.08 shall not be liable for breach of section 14.09(a) with respect to claims against the dissolved corporation that are barred or satisfied under sections 14.06, 14.07, or 14.08.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Claim” defined, see § 14.06

Directors’ liability for unlawful distributions, see § 8.33

Dissolved corporation” defined, see § 14.03

Distribution” defined, see § 1.40

Known claims, see § 14.06

Other claims, see § 14.07

Proceeding to determine security for contingent claims, see § 14.08

Subchapter B.

ADMINISTRATIVE DISSOLUTION

§ 14.20. GROUNDS FOR ADMINISTRATIVE DISSOLUTION

The secretary of state may commence a proceeding under section 14.21 to administratively dissolve a corporation if:

(1) the corporation does not pay within 60 days after they are due any franchise taxes or penalties imposed by this Act or other law;

(2) the corporation does not deliver its annual report to the secretary of state within 60 days after it is due;

(3) the corporation is without a registered agent or registered office in this state for 60 days or more;

(4) the corporation does not notify the secretary of state within 60 days that its registered agent or registered office has been changed, that its registered agent has resigned, or that its registered office has been discontinued; or

(5) the corporation’s period of duration stated in its articles of incorporation expires.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.22.

Appeal from administrative dissolution, see § 14.23.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Duration of corporation, see § 3.02.

Judicial dissolution, see §§ 14.30-14.33.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Registered office and agent, see ch. 5.

Reinstatement following administrative dissolution, see § 14.22.

Voluntary dissolution, see §§ 14.01 & 14.02.

§ 14.21. PROCEDURE FOR AND EFFECT OF ADMINISTRATIVE DISSOLUTION

(a) If the secretary of state determines that one or more grounds exist under section 14.20 for dissolving a corporation, he shall serve the corporation with written notice of his determination under section 5.04.

(b) If the corporation does not correct each ground for dissolution or demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the secretary of state that each ground determined by the secretary of state does not exist within 60 days after service of the notice is perfected under section 5.04, the secretary of state shall administratively dissolve the corporation by signing a certificate of dissolution that recites the ground or grounds for dissolution and its effective date. The secretary of state shall file the original of the certificate and serve a copy on the corporation under section 5.04.

(c) A corporation administratively dissolved continues its corporate existence but may not carry on any business except that necessary to wind up and liquidate its business and affairs under section 14.05 and notify claimants under sections 14.06 and 14.07.

(d) The administrative dissolution of a corporation does not terminate the authority of its registered agent.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appeal from denial of reinstatement, see § 14.23.

Claims, see §§ 14.06 & 14.07.

Deposit with state treasurer, see § 14.33.

Effective date of service, see § 5.04.

Reinstatement following administrative dissolution, see § 14.22.

Winding up, see § 14.05.

§ 14.22. REINSTATEMENT FOLLOWING ADMINISTRATIVE DISSOLUTION

(a) A corporation administratively dissolved under section 14.21 may apply to the secretary of state for reinstatement within two years after the effective date of dissolution. The application must:

- (1) recite the name of the corporation and the effective date of its administrative dissolution;
- (2) state that the ground or grounds for dissolution either did not exist or have been eliminated;
- (3) state that the corporation's name satisfies the requirements of section 4.01; and
- (4) contain a certificate from the [taxing authority] reciting that all taxes owed by the corporation have been paid.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) If the secretary of state determines that the application contains the information required by subsection (a) and that the information is correct, he shall cancel the certificate of dissolution and prepare a certificate of reinstatement that recites his determination and the effective date of reinstatement, file the original of the certificate, and serve a copy on the corporation under section 5.04.

(c) When the reinstatement is effective, it relates back to and takes effect as of the effective date of the administrative dissolution and the corporation resumes carrying on its business as if the administrative dissolution had never occurred.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Appeal from denial of reinstatement, see § 14.23.

Corporate name generally, see ch. 4.

Effective date of administrative dissolution, see § 14.21.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Grounds for administrative dissolution, see § 14.20.

§ 14.23. APPEAL FROM DENIAL OF REINSTATEMENT

(a) If the secretary of state denies a corporation's application for reinstatement following administrative dissolution, he shall serve the corporation under section 5.04 with a written notice that explains the reason or reasons for denial.

(b) The corporation may appeal the denial of reinstatement to the [name or describe] court within 30 days after service of the notice of denial is perfected. The corporation appeals by petitioning the court to set aside the dissolution and attaching to the petition copies of the secretary of state's certificate of dissolution, the corporation's application for reinstatement, and the secretary of state's notice of denial.

(c) The court may summarily order the secretary of state to reinstate the dissolved corporation or may take other action the court considers appropriate.

(d) The court's final decision may be appealed as in other civil proceedings.

CROSS-REFERENCES

"Court" described, see § 1.26.

Effective date of service, see § 5.04.

Grounds for administrative dissolution, see § 14.20.

"Notice" defined, see § 1.41.

Reinstatement following administrative dissolution, see § 14.22.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter C. JUDICIAL DISSOLUTION

§ 14.30. GROUNDS FOR JUDICIAL DISSOLUTION

The [name or describe court or courts] may dissolve a corporation:

- (1) in a proceeding by the attorney general if it is established that:
 - (i) the corporation obtained its articles of incorporation through fraud; or
 - (ii) the corporation has continued to exceed or abuse the authority conferred upon it by law;
- (2) in a proceeding by a shareholder if it is established that:
 - (i) the directors are deadlocked in the management of the corporate affairs, the shareholders are unable to break the deadlock, and irreparable injury to the corporation is threatened or being suffered, or the business and affairs of the corporation can no longer be conducted to the advantage of the shareholders generally, because of the deadlock;
 - (ii) the directors or those in control of the corporation have acted, are acting, or will act in a manner that is illegal, oppressive, or fraudulent;
 - (iii) the shareholders are deadlocked in voting power and have failed, for a period that includes at least two consecutive annual meeting dates, to elect successors to directors whose terms have expired; or
 - (iv) the corporate assets are being misapplied or wasted;
- (3) in a proceeding by a creditor if it is established that:
 - (i) the creditor's claim has been reduced to judgment, the execution on the judgment returned unsatisfied, and the corporation is insolvent; or
 - (ii) the corporation has admitted in writing that the creditor's claim is due and owing and the corporation is insolvent; or
- (4) in a proceeding by the corporation to have its voluntary dissolution continued under court supervision.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Administrative dissolution, see §§ 14.20-14.23.
Director action, see §§ 8.20-8.24.
Election of directors, see § 8.03.
“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.
Purchase of shares in lieu of dissolution, see § 14.34.
Revocation of articles of incorporation by state, see § 2.03.
Shareholder voting, see §§ 7.25-7.27.
Terms of directors, see §§ 8.05 & 8.06.
Ultra vires acts, see § 3.04.
Voluntary dissolution, see §§ 14.01-14.05.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 14.31. PROCEDURE FOR JUDICIAL DISSOLUTION

(a) Venue for a proceeding by the attorney general to dissolve a corporation lies in [name the county or counties]. Venue for a proceeding brought by any other party named in section 14.30 lies in the county where a corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is or was last located.

(b) It is not necessary to make shareholders parties to a proceeding to dissolve a corporation unless relief is sought against them individually.

(c) A court in a proceeding brought to dissolve a corporation may issue injunctions, appoint a receiver or custodian pendente lite with all powers and duties the court directs, take other action required to preserve the corporate assets wherever located, and carry on the business of the corporation until a full hearing can be held.

(d) Within 10 days of the commencement of a proceeding under section 14.30(2) to dissolve a corporation that has no shares listed on a national securities exchange or regularly traded in a market maintained by one or more members of a national or affiliated securities association, the corporation must send to all shareholders, other than the petitioner, a notice stating that the shareholders are entitled to avoid the dissolution of the corporation by electing to purchase the petitioner's shares under section 14.34 and accompanied by a copy of section 14.34.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Custodian, see § 14.33.

Judicial dissolution:

 grounds, see § 14.30.

 purchase of shares in lieu of, see § 14.34.

“Principal office”:

 defined, see § 1.40.

 designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Receiver, see § 14.33.

Registered office:

 designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

 required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

§ 14.32. RECEIVERSHIP OR CUSTODIANSHIP

(a) A court in a judicial proceeding brought to dissolve a corporation may appoint one or more receivers to wind up and liquidate, or one or more custodians to manage, the business and affairs of the corporation. The court shall hold a hearing, after notifying all parties to the proceeding and any interested persons designated by the court, before appointing a receiver or custodian. The court appointing a receiver or custodian has exclusive jurisdiction over the corporation and all of its property wherever located.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(b) The court may appoint an individual or a domestic or foreign corporation (authorized to transact business in this state) as a receiver or custodian. The court may require the receiver or custodian to post bond, with or without sureties, in an amount the court directs.

(c) The court shall describe the powers and duties of the receiver or custodian in its appointing order, which may be amended from time to time. Among other powers:

(1) the receiver (i) may dispose of all or any part of the assets of the corporation wherever located, at a public or private sale, if authorized by the court; and (ii) may sue and defend in his own name as receiver of the corporation in all courts of this state;

(2) the custodian may exercise all of the powers of the corporation, through or in place of its board of directors, to the extent necessary to manage the affairs of the corporation in the best interests of its shareholders and creditors.

(d) The court during a receivership may redesignate the receiver a custodian, and during a custodianship may redesignate the custodian a receiver, if doing so is in the best interests of the corporation, its shareholders, and creditors.

(e) The court from time to time during the receivership or custodianship may order compensation paid and expense disbursements or reimbursements made to the receiver or custodian and his counsel from the assets of the corporation or proceeds from the sale of the assets.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Custodianship pendente lite, see § 14.31.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Receivership pendente lite, see § 14.31.

§ 14.33. DECREE OF DISSOLUTION

(a) If after a hearing the court determines that one or more grounds for judicial dissolution described in section 14.30 exist, it may enter a decree dissolving the corporation and specifying the effective date of the dissolution, and the clerk of the court shall deliver a certified copy of the decree to the secretary of state, who shall file it.

(b) After entering the decree of dissolution, the court shall direct the winding-up and liquidation of the corporation’s business and affairs in accordance with section 14.05 and the notification of claimants in accordance with sections 14.06 and 14.07.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Claims, see §§ 14.06 & 14.07.

Custodianship, see §§ 14.31 & 14.32.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Deposit with state treasurer, see § 14.40.

Dissolution does not terminate authority of registered agent, see § 14.05.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Receivership, see §§ 14.31 & 14.32.

Secretary of state’s filing duties, see § 1.25.

Winding-up, see § 14.05.

§ 14.34. ELECTION TO PURCHASE IN LIEU OF DISSOLUTION

(a) In a proceeding under section 14.30(2) to dissolve a corporation that has no shares listed on a national securities exchange or regularly traded in a market maintained by one or more members of a national or affiliated securities association, the corporation may elect or, if it fails to elect, one or more shareholders may elect to purchase all shares owned by the petitioning shareholder at the fair value of the shares. An election pursuant to this section shall be irrevocable unless the court determines that it is equitable to set aside or modify the election.

(b) An election to purchase pursuant to this section may be filed with the court at any time within 90 days after the filing of the petition under section 14.30(2) or at such later time as the court in its discretion may allow. If the election to purchase is filed by one or more shareholders, the corporation shall, within 10 days thereafter, give written notice to all shareholders, other than the petitioner. The notice must state the name and number of shares owned by the petitioner and the name and number of shares owned by each electing shareholder and must advise the recipients of their right to join in the election to purchase shares in accordance with this section. Shareholders who wish to participate must file notice of their intention to join in the purchase no later than 30 days after the effective date of the notice to them. All shareholders who have filed an election or notice of their intention to participate in the election to purchase thereby become parties to the proceeding and shall participate in the purchase in proportion to their ownership of shares as of the date the first election was filed, unless they otherwise agree or the court otherwise directs. After an election has been filed by the corporation or one or more shareholders, the proceeding under section 14.30(2) may not be discontinued or settled, nor may the petitioning shareholder sell or otherwise dispose of his shares, unless the court determines that it would be equitable to the corporation and the shareholders, other than the petitioner, to permit such discontinuance, settlement, sale, or other disposition.

(c) If, within 60 days of the filing of the first election, the parties reach agreement as to the fair value and terms of purchase of the petitioner’s shares, the court shall enter an order directing the purchase of petitioner’s shares upon the terms and conditions agreed to by the parties.

(d) If the parties are unable to reach an agreement as provided for in subsection (c), the court, upon application of any party, shall stay the section 14.30(2) proceedings and determine the fair value of the petitioner’s shares as of the day before the date on which the petition under section 14.30(2) was filed or as of such other date as the court deems appropriate under the circumstances.

(e) Upon determining the fair value of the shares, the court shall enter an order directing the purchase upon such terms and conditions as the court deems appropriate, which may include payment of the purchase price in installments, where necessary in the interests of equity, provision for security to assure payment of the purchase price and any additional costs, fees, and expenses as may have been awarded, and, if the shares are to be purchased by shareholders, the allocation of shares among them.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

In allocating petitioner's shares among holders of different classes of shares, the court should attempt to preserve the existing distribution of voting rights among holders of different classes insofar as practicable and may direct that holders of a specific class or classes shall not participate in the purchase. Interest may be allowed at the rate and from the date determined by the court to be equitable, but if the court finds that the refusal of the petitioning shareholder to accept an offer of payment was arbitrary or otherwise not in good faith, no interest shall be allowed. If the court finds that the petitioning shareholder had probable grounds for relief under paragraphs (ii) or (iv) of section 14.30(2), it may award to the petitioning shareholder reasonable fees and expenses of counsel and of any experts employed by him.

(f) Upon entry of an order under subsections (c) or (e), the court shall dismiss the petition to dissolve the corporation under section 14.30, and the petitioning shareholder shall no longer have any rights or status as a shareholder of the corporation, except the right to receive the amounts awarded to him by the order of the court which shall be enforceable in the same manner as any other judgment.

(g) The purchase ordered pursuant to subsection (e) shall be made within 10 days after the date the order becomes final unless before that time the corporation files with the court a notice of its intention to adopt articles of dissolution pursuant to sections 14.02 and 14.03, which articles must then be adopted and filed within 50 days thereafter. Upon filing of such articles of dissolution, the corporation shall be dissolved in accordance with the provisions of sections 14.05 through 14.07, and the order entered pursuant to subsection (e) shall no longer be of any force or effect, except that the court may award the petitioning shareholder reasonable fees and expenses in accordance with the provisions of the last sentence of subsection (e) and the petitioner may continue to pursue any claims previously asserted on behalf of the corporation.

(h) Any payment by the corporation pursuant to an order under subsections (c) or (e), other than an award of fees and expenses pursuant to subsection (e), is subject to the provisions of section 6.40.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Judicial dissolution, see § 14.30.

Notice required, see § 14.31(d).

Subchapter D.

MISCELLANEOUS

§ 14.40. DEPOSIT WITH STATE TREASURER

Assets of a dissolved corporation that should be transferred to a creditor, claimant, or shareholder of the corporation who cannot be found or who is not competent to receive them shall be reduced to cash and deposited with the state treasurer or other appropriate state official for safekeeping. When the creditor, claimant, or shareholder furnishes satisfactory proof of entitlement to the amount deposited, the state treasurer or other appropriate state official shall pay him or his representative that amount.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Administrative dissolution, see § 14.20.

Claims, see §§ 14.06 & 14.07.

Judicial dissolution, see § 14.30.

Voluntary dissolution, see § 14.05.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 15 FOREIGN CORPORATIONS

Subchapter A. CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

- § 15.01. Authority to transact business required
- § 15.02. Consequences of transacting business without authority
- § 15.03. Application for certificate of authority
- § 15.04. Amended certificate of authority
- § 15.05. Effect of certificate of authority
- § 15.06. Corporate name of foreign corporation
- § 15.07. Registered office and registered agent of foreign corporation
- § 15.08. Change of registered office or registered agent of foreign corporation
- § 15.09. Resignation of registered agent of foreign corporation
- § 15.10. Service on foreign corporation

Subchapter B. WITHDRAWAL OR TRANSFER OF AUTHORITY

- § 15.20. Withdrawal of foreign corporation
- § 15.21. Automatic withdrawal upon certain conversions
- § 15.22. Withdrawal upon conversion to a nonfiling entity
- § 15.23. Transfer of authority

Subchapter C. REVOCATION OF CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

- § 15.30. Grounds for revocation
- § 15.31. Procedure for and effect of revocation
- § 15.32. Appeal from revocation

Subchapter A. CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

§ 15.01. AUTHORITY TO TRANSACT BUSINESS REQUIRED

- (a) A foreign corporation may not transact business in this state until it obtains a certificate of authority from the secretary of state.
- (b) The following activities, among others, do not constitute transacting business within the meaning of subsection (a):
 - (1) maintaining, defending, or settling any proceeding;
 - (2) holding meetings of the board of directors or shareholders or carrying on other activities concerning internal corporate affairs;
 - (3) maintaining bank accounts;
 - (4) maintaining offices or agencies for the transfer, exchange, and registration of the corporation's own securities or maintaining trustees or depositaries with respect to those securities;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (5) selling through independent contractors;
- (6) soliciting or obtaining orders, whether by mail or through employees or agents or otherwise, if the orders require acceptance outside this state before they become contracts;
- (7) creating or acquiring indebtedness, mortgages, and security interests in real or personal property;
- (8) securing or collecting debts or enforcing mortgages and security interests in property securing the debts;
- (9) owning, without more, real or personal property;
- (10) conducting an isolated transaction that is completed within 30 days and that is not one in the course of repeated transactions of a like nature;
- (11) transacting business in interstate commerce.

(c) The list of activities in subsection (b) is not exhaustive.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Application of Act to existing qualified foreign corporation, see § 17.02.

Board of directors meetings, see § 8.20.

Certificate of authority, see § 15.03.

“Foreign corporation” defined, see § 1.40.

Penalty for transacting business without authority, see § 15.02.

“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.

Shareholders’ meetings, see §§ 7.01-7.03.

§ 15.02. CONSEQUENCES OF TRANSACTING BUSINESS WITHOUT AUTHORITY

(a) A foreign corporation transacting business in this state without a certificate of authority may not maintain a proceeding in any court in this state until it obtains a certificate of authority.

(b) The successor to a foreign corporation that transacted business in this state without a certificate of authority and the assignee of a cause of action arising out of that business may not maintain a proceeding based on that cause of action in any court in this state until the foreign corporation or its successor obtains a certificate of authority.

(c) A court may stay a proceeding commenced by a foreign corporation, its successor, or assignee until it determines whether the foreign corporation or its successor requires a certificate of authority. If it so determines, the court may further stay the proceeding until the foreign corporation or its successor obtains the certificate.

(d) A foreign corporation is liable for a civil penalty of \$_____ for each day, but not to exceed a total of \$_____ for each year, it transacts business in this state without a certificate of authority. The attorney general may collect all penalties due under this subsection.

(e) Notwithstanding subsections (a) and (b), the failure of a foreign corporation to obtain a certificate of authority does not impair the validity of its corporate acts or prevent it from defending any proceeding in this state.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Certificate of authority, see § 15.03.
“Foreign corporation” defined, see § 1.40.
“Proceeding” defined, see § 1.40.
Transacting business, see § 15.01.

§ 15.03. APPLICATION FOR CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

(a) A foreign corporation may apply for a certificate of authority to transact business in this state by delivering an application to the secretary of state for filing. The application must set forth:

- (1) the name of the foreign corporation or, if its name is unavailable for use in this state, a corporate name that satisfies the requirements of section 15.06;
- (2) the name of the state or country under whose law it is incorporated;
- (3) its date of incorporation and period of duration;
- (4) the street address of its principal office;
- (5) the address of its registered office in this state and the name of its registered agent at that office; and
- (6) the names and usual business addresses of its current directors and officers.

(b) The foreign corporation shall deliver with the completed application a certificate of existence (or a document of similar import) duly authenticated by the secretary of state or other official having custody of corporate records in the state or country under whose law it is incorporated.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amended certificate of authority, see § 15.04.
Application of Act to existing qualified foreign corporation, see § 17.02.
Certificate of existence, see § 1.28.
Corporate name, see § 15.06, ch. 4.
Corporate purposes, see § 3.01.
“Deliver,” see § 1.40.
Filing fees, see § 1.22.
Filing requirements, see § 1.20.
Forms, see § 1.21.
“Principal office”:
 defined, see § 1.40.
 designated in annual report, see § 16.21.
Registered office and agent, see §§ 2.02, 5.01, 15.07.
Report to secretary of state, see § 16.21.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 15.04. AMENDED CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

(a) A foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state must obtain an amended certificate of authority from the secretary of state if it changes:

- (1) its corporate name;
- (2) the period of its duration; or
- (3) the state or country of its incorporation.

(b) The requirements of section 15.03 for obtaining an original certificate of authority apply to obtaining an amended certificate under this section.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Certificate of authority, see § 15.03.

Change of registered office or agent, see § 15.08.

Corporate name, see § 15.06, ch. 4.

Duration, see § 3.02.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Forms, see § 1.21.

Resignation of registered agent, see § 15.09.

§ 15.05. EFFECT OF CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

(a) A certificate of authority authorizes the foreign corporation to which it is issued to transact business in this state subject, however, to the right of the state to revoke the certificate as provided in this Act.

(b) A foreign corporation with a valid certificate of authority has the same but no greater rights and has the same but no greater privileges as, and except as otherwise provided by this Act is subject to the same duties, restrictions, penalties, and liabilities now or later imposed on, a domestic corporation of like character.

(c) This Act does not authorize this state to regulate the organization or internal affairs of a foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporate powers, see § 3.02.

Corporate purposes, see § 3.01.

Revocation of certificate of authority, see §§ 15.30-15.32.

Withdrawal of foreign corporations, see § 15.20.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 15.06. CORPORATE NAME OF FOREIGN CORPORATION

(a) If the corporate name of a foreign corporation does not satisfy the requirements of section 4.01, the foreign corporation to obtain or maintain a certificate of authority to transact business in this state:

- (1) may add the word “corporation,” “incorporated,” “company,” or “limited,” or the abbreviation “corp.,” “inc.,” “co.,” or “Ltd.,” to its corporate name for use in this state; or
- (2) may use a fictitious name to transact business in this state if its real name is unavailable and it delivers to the secretary of state for filing a copy of the resolution of its board of directors, certified by its secretary, adopting the fictitious name.

(b) Except as authorized by subsections (c) and (d), the corporate name (including a fictitious name) of a foreign corporation must be distinguishable upon the records of the secretary of state from:

- (1) the corporate name of a corporation incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state;
- (2) a corporate name reserved or registered under section 4.02 or 4.03;
- (3) the fictitious name of another foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state; and
- (4) the corporate name of a not-for-profit corporation incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state.

(c) A foreign corporation may apply to the secretary of state for authorization to use in this state the name of another corporation (incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state) that is not distinguishable upon his records from the name applied for. The secretary of state shall authorize use of the name applied for if:

- (1) the other corporation consents to the use in writing and submits an undertaking in form satisfactory to the secretary of state to change its name to a name that is distinguishable upon the records of the secretary of state from the name of the applying corporation; or
- (2) the applicant delivers to the secretary of state a certified copy of a final judgment of a court of competent jurisdiction establishing the applicant’s right to use the name applied for in this state.

(d) A foreign corporation may use in this state the name (including the fictitious name) of another domestic or foreign corporation that is used in this state if the other corporation is incorporated or authorized to transact business in this state and the foreign corporation:

- (1) has merged with the other corporation;
- (2) has been formed by reorganization of the other corporation; or
- (3) has acquired all or substantially all of the assets, including the corporate name, of the other corporation.

(e) If a foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state changes its corporate name to one that does not satisfy the requirements of section 4.01, it may not transact business in this state under the changed name until it adopts a name satisfying the requirements of section 4.01 and obtains an amended certificate of authority under section 15.04.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Amended certificate of authority, see § 15.04.

Corporate names generally, see ch. 4.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.23.

Registered name, see § 4.03.

Reserved name, see § 4.02.

§ 15.07. REGISTERED OFFICE AND REGISTERED AGENT OF FOREIGN CORPORATION

Each foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state must continuously maintain in this state:

(1) a registered office that may be the same as any of its places of business; and

(2) a registered agent, who may be:

(i) an individual who resides in this state and whose business office is identical with the registered office;

(ii) a domestic corporation or not-for-profit domestic corporation whose business office is identical with the registered office; or

(iii) a foreign corporation or foreign not-for-profit corporation authorized to transact business in this state whose business office is identical with the registered office.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Changing registered office or agent, see § 15.08.

Registered office and agent generally, see ch. 5.

Resignation of registered agent, see § 15.09.

Revocation of certificate of authority does not affect authority of registered agent, see § 15.31.

Revocation of certificate of authority for failure to appoint and maintain registered office and agent, see § 15.30.

Service on foreign corporation, see §§ 15.10, 15.20, 15.31.

§ 15.08. CHANGE OF REGISTERED OFFICE OR REGISTERED AGENT OF FOREIGN CORPORATION

(a) A foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state may change its registered office or registered agent by delivering to the secretary of state for filing a statement of change that sets forth:

(1) its name;

(2) the street address of its current registered office;

(3) if the current registered office is to be changed, the street address of its new registered office;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (4) the name of its current registered agent;
- (5) if the current registered agent is to be changed, the name of its new registered agent and the new agent's written consent (either on the statement or attached to it) to the appointment; and
- (6) that after the change or changes are made, the street addresses of its registered office and the business office of its registered agent will be identical.

(b) If a registered agent changes the street address of his business office, he may change the street address of the registered office of any foreign corporation for which he is the registered agent by notifying the corporation in writing of the change and signing (either manually or in facsimile) and delivering to the secretary of state for filing a statement of change that complies with the requirements of subsection (a) and recites that the corporation has been notified of the change.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Notice to corporation, see § 1.41.

Resignation of registered agent, see § 15.09.

Revocation of certificate of authority for failure to file notice of change of registered office or agent, see § 15.30.

§ 15.09. RESIGNATION OF REGISTERED AGENT OF FOREIGN CORPORATION

(a) The registered agent of a foreign corporation may resign his agency appointment by signing and delivering to the secretary of state for filing the original and two exact or conformed copies of a statement of resignation. The statement of resignation may include a statement that the registered office is also discontinued.

(b) After filing the statement, the secretary of state shall attach the filing receipt to one copy and mail the copy and receipt to the registered office if not discontinued. The secretary of state shall mail the other copy to the foreign corporation at its principal office address shown in its most recent annual report.

(c) The agency appointment is terminated, and the registered office discontinued if so provided, on the 31st day after the date on which the statement was filed.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Change of registered agent, see § 15.08.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

§ 15.10. SERVICE ON FOREIGN CORPORATION

(a) The registered agent of a foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state is the corporation’s agent for service of process, notice, or demand required or permitted by law to be served on the foreign corporation.

(b) A foreign corporation may be served by registered or certified mail, return receipt requested, addressed to the secretary of the foreign corporation at its principal office shown in its application for a certificate of authority or in its most recent annual report if the foreign corporation:

- (1) has no registered agent or its registered agent cannot with reasonable diligence be served;
- (2) has withdrawn from transacting business in this state under section 15.20; or
- (3) has had its certificate of authority revoked under section 15.31.

(c) Service is perfected under subsection (b) at the earliest of:

- (1) the date the foreign corporation receives the mail;
- (2) the date shown on the return receipt, if signed on behalf of the foreign corporation; or
- (3) five days after its deposit in the United States mail, as evidenced by the postmark, if mailed postpaid and correctly addressed.

(d) This section does not prescribe the only means, or necessarily the required means, of serving a foreign corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Application for certificate of authority, see § 15.03.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Revocation of certificate of authority does not revoke authority of registered agent, see § 15.31.

Service of process fees, see § 1.22.

Service on foreign corporation with revoked certificate of authority, see § 15.31.

Service on withdrawn foreign corporation, see § 15.20.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Subchapter B. WITHDRAWAL OR TRANSFER OF AUTHORITY

§ 15.20. WITHDRAWAL OF FOREIGN CORPORATION

(a) A foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state may not withdraw from this state until it obtains a certificate of withdrawal from the secretary of state.

(b) A foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state may apply for a certificate of withdrawal by delivering an application to the secretary of state for filing. The application must set forth:

(1) the name of the foreign corporation and the name of the state or country under whose law it is incorporated;

(2) that it is not transacting business in this state and that it surrenders its authority to transact business in this state;

(3) that it revokes the authority of its registered agent to accept service on its behalf and appoints the secretary of state as its agent for service of process in any proceeding based on a cause of action arising during the time it was authorized to transact business in this state;

(4) a mailing address to which the secretary of state may mail a copy of any process served on him under subdivision (3); and

(5) a commitment to notify the secretary of state in the future of any change in its mailing address.

(c) After the withdrawal of the corporation is effective, service of process on the secretary of state under this section is service on the foreign corporation. Upon receipt of process, the secretary of state shall mail a copy of the process to the foreign corporation at the mailing address set forth under subsection (b).

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

Forms, see § 1.21.

Registered agent, see § 15.07.

Service of process fees, see § 1.22.

Service of process on foreign corporation, see § 15.10.

Transacting business, see § 15.01.

§ 15.21. AUTOMATIC WITHDRAWAL UPON CERTAIN CONVERSIONS

A foreign business corporation authorized to transact business in this state that converts to a domestic nonprofit corporation or any form of domestic filing entity shall be deemed to have withdrawn on the effective date of the conversion.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Domestic nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(14C).

Filing entity” defined, see § 1.40(9B).

Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

§ 15.22. WITHDRAWAL UPON CONVERSION TO A NONFILING ENTITY

(a) A foreign business corporation authorized to transact business in this state that converts to a domestic or foreign nonfiling entity shall apply for a certificate of withdrawal by delivering an application to the secretary of state for filing. The application must set forth:

(1) the name of the foreign business corporation and the name of the state or country under whose law it was incorporated before the conversion;

(2) that it surrenders its authority to transact business in this state as a foreign business corporation;

(3) the type of unincorporated entity to which it has been converted and the jurisdiction whose laws govern its internal affairs;

(4) if it has been converted to a foreign unincorporated entity:

(i) that it revokes the authority of its registered agent to accept service on its behalf and appoints the secretary of state as its agent for service of process in any proceeding based on a cause of action arising during the time it was authorized to transact business in this state;

(ii) a mailing address to which the secretary of state may mail a copy of any process served on him under paragraph (i); and

(iii) a commitment to notify the secretary of state in the future of any change in its mailing address.

(b) After the withdrawal under this section of a corporation that has converted to a foreign unincorporated entity is effective, service of process on the secretary of state is service on the foreign unincorporated entity. Upon receipt of process, the secretary of state shall mail a copy of the process to the foreign unincorporated entity at the mailing address set forth under subsection (a)(4).

(c) After the withdrawal under this section of a corporation that has converted to a domestic unincorporated entity is effective, service of process shall be made on the unincorporated entity in accordance with the regular procedures for service of process on the form of unincorporated entity to which the corporation was converted.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Domestic unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(6A).

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

Nonfiling entity” defined, see § 1.40(14B).

Unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(24A).

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 15.23. TRANSFER OF AUTHORITY

(a) A foreign business corporation authorized to transact business in this state that converts to a foreign nonprofit corporation or to any form of foreign unincorporated entity that is required to obtain a certificate of authority or make a similar type of filing with the secretary of state if it transacts business in this state shall file with the secretary of state an application for transfer of authority executed by any officer or other duly authorized representative. The application shall set forth:

- (1) the name of the corporation;
- (2) the type of unincorporated entity to which it has been converted and the jurisdiction whose laws govern its internal affairs;
- (3) any other information that would be required in a filing under the laws of this state by an unincorporated entity of the type the corporation has become seeking authority to transact business in this state.

(b) The application for transfer of authority shall be delivered to the secretary of state for filing and shall take effect at the effective time provided in section 1.23.

(c) Upon the effectiveness of the application for transfer of authority, the authority of the corporation under this chapter to transact business in this state shall be transferred without interruption to the converted entity which shall thereafter hold such authority subject to the provisions of the laws of this state applicable to that type of unincorporated entity.

CROSS-REFERENCES

“Deliver” defined, see § 1.40(5).

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

“Foreign business corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10).

“Foreign nonprofit corporation” defined, see § 1.40(10A).

“Foreign unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(10B).

“Unincorporated entity” defined, see § 1.40(24A).

Subchapter C.

REVOCATION OF CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY

§ 15.30. GROUNDS FOR REVOCATION

The secretary of state may commence a proceeding under section 15.31 to revoke the certificate of authority of a foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state if:

- (1) the foreign corporation does not deliver its annual report to the secretary of state within 60 days after it is due;
- (2) the foreign corporation does not pay within 60 days after they are due any franchise taxes or penalties imposed by this Act or other law;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(3) the foreign corporation is without a registered agent or registered office in this state for 60 days or more;

(4) the foreign corporation does not inform the secretary of state under section 15.08 or 15.09 that its registered agent or registered office has changed, that its registered agent has resigned, or that its registered office has been discontinued within 60 days of the change, resignation, or discontinuance;

(5) an incorporator, director, officer, or agent of the foreign corporation signed a document he knew was false in any material respect with intent that the document be delivered to the secretary of state for filing;

(6) the secretary of state receives a duly authenticated certificate from the secretary of state or other official having custody of corporate records in the state or country under whose law the foreign corporation is incorporated stating that it has been dissolved or disappeared as the result of a merger.

ROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Appeal from revocation, see § 15.32.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Delivery of false document to secretary of state, see § 1.29.

Procedure for revocation, see § 15.31.

Registered office and agent, see §§ 15.07 & 15.08.

§ 15.31. PROCEDURE FOR AND EFFECT OF REVOCATION

(a) If the secretary of state determines that one or more grounds exist under section 15.30 for revocation of a certificate of authority, he shall serve the foreign corporation with written notice of his determination under section 15.10.

(b) If the foreign corporation does not correct each ground for revocation or demonstrate to the reasonable satisfaction of the secretary of state that each ground determined by the secretary of state does not exist within 60 days after service of the notice is perfected under section 15.10, the secretary of state may revoke the foreign corporation’s certificate of authority by signing a certificate of revocation that recites the ground or grounds for revocation and its effective date. The secretary of state shall file the original of the certificate and serve a copy on the foreign corporation under section 15.10.

(c) The authority of a foreign corporation to transact business in this state ceases on the date shown on the certificate revoking its certificate of authority.

(d) The secretary of state’s revocation of a foreign corporation’s certificate of authority appoints the secretary of state the foreign corporation’s agent for service of process in any proceeding based on a cause of action which arose during the time the foreign corporation was authorized to transact business in this state. Service of process on the secretary of state under this subsection is service on the foreign

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

corporation. Upon receipt of process, the secretary of state shall mail a copy of the process to the secretary of the foreign corporation at its principal office shown in its most recent annual report or in any subsequent communication received from the corporation stating the current mailing address of its principal office, or, if none are on file, in its application for a certificate of authority.

(e) Revocation of a foreign corporation's certificate of authority does not terminate the authority of the registered agent of the corporation.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report, see § 16.21.

Appeal from revocation, see § 15.32.

Rounds for revocation, see § 15.30.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Service on foreign corporation, see § 15.10.

§ 15.32. APPEAL FROM REVOCATION

(a) A foreign corporation may appeal the secretary of state's revocation of its certificate of authority to the [name or describe] court within 30 days after service of the certificate of revocation is perfected under section 15.10. The foreign corporation appeals by petitioning the court to set aside the revocation and attaching to the petition copies of its certificate of authority and the secretary of state's certificate of revocation.

(b) The court may summarily order the secretary of state to reinstate the certificate of authority or may take any other action the court considers appropriate.

(c) The court's final decision may be appealed as in other civil proceedings.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Effective date of service, see § 15.10.

Grounds for revocation, see § 15.30.

Procedure for revocation, see § 15.31.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 16 RECORDS AND REPORTS

Subchapter A. RECORDS

- § 16.01. Corporate records
- § 16.02. Inspection of records by shareholders
- § 16.03. Scope of inspection right
- § 16.04. Court-ordered inspection
- § 16.05. Inspection of records by directors
- § 16.06. Exception to notice requirements

Subchapter B. REPORTS

- § 16.20. Financial statements for shareholders
- § 16.21. Annual report for secretary of state

Subchapter A. RECORDS

§ 16.01. CORPORATE RECORDS

- (a) A corporation shall keep as permanent records minutes of all meetings of its shareholders and board of directors, a record of all actions taken by the shareholders or board of directors without a meeting, and a record of all actions taken by a committee of the board of directors in place of the board of directors on behalf of the corporation.
- (b) A corporation shall maintain appropriate accounting records.
- (c) A corporation or its agent shall maintain a record of its shareholders, in a form that permits preparation of a list of the names and addresses of all shareholders, in alphabetical order by class of shares showing the number and class of shares held by each.
- (d) A corporation shall maintain its records in written form or in another form capable of conversion into written form within a reasonable time.
- (e) A corporation shall keep a copy of the following records at its principal office:
 - (1) its articles or restated articles of incorporation, all amendments to them currently in effect, and any notices to shareholders referred to in section 1.20(k)(5) regarding facts on which a filed document is dependent;
 - (2) its bylaws or restated bylaws and all amendments to them currently in effect;
 - (3) resolutions adopted by its board of directors creating one or more classes or series of shares, and fixing their relative rights, preferences, and limitations, if shares issued pursuant to those resolutions are outstanding;

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (4) the minutes of all shareholders' meetings, and records of all action taken by shareholders without a meeting, for the past three years;
- (5) all written communications to shareholders generally within the past three years, including the financial statements furnished for the past three years under section 16.20;
- (6) a list of the names and business addresses of its current directors and officers; and
- (7) its most recent annual report delivered to the secretary of state under section 16.21.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.
Board of directors' meeting, see § 8.20.
Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.
Committees of board of directors, see § 8.25.
"Deliver," see § 1.40.
Directors' action without meeting, see § 8.21.
Inspection of corporate records, see §§ 16.02 & 16.04.
Officers, see § 8.40.
"Principal office":
 defined, see § 1.40.
 designated in annual report, see § 16.21.
Reports of corporation, see §§ 16.20-16.21.
Restatement of articles of incorporation, see § 10.07.
Series of shares, see § 6.02.
Shareholders' action without meeting, see § 7.04.
Shareholders' meeting, see §§ 7.01-7.03.
Shareholders' voting list, see § 7.20.

§ 16.02. INSPECTION OF RECORDS BY SHAREHOLDERS

(a) A shareholder of a corporation is entitled to inspect and copy, during regular business hours at the corporation's principal office, any of the records of the corporation described in section 16.01(e) if he gives the corporation written notice of his demand at least five business days before the date on which he wishes to inspect and copy.

(b) A shareholder of a corporation is entitled to inspect and copy, during regular business hours at a reasonable location specified by the corporation, any of the following records of the corporation if the shareholder meets the requirements of subsection (c) and gives the corporation written notice of his demand at least five business days before the date on which he wishes to inspect and copy:

- (1) excerpts from minutes of any meeting of the board of directors, records of any action of a committee of the board of directors while acting in place of the board of directors on behalf of the corporation, minutes of any meeting of the shareholders, and records of action taken by the shareholders or board of directors without a meeting, to the extent not subject to inspection under section 16.02(a);
- (2) accounting records of the corporation; and
- (3) the record of shareholders.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

- (c) A shareholder may inspect and copy the records described in subsection (b) only if:
- (1) his demand is made in good faith and for a proper purpose;
 - (2) he describes with reasonable particularity his purpose and the records he desires to inspect;
- and
- (3) the records are directly connected with his purpose.
- (d) The right of inspection granted by this section may not be abolished or limited by a corporation's articles of incorporation or bylaws.
- (e) This section does not affect:
- (1) the right of a shareholder to inspect records under section 7.20 or, if the shareholder is in litigation with the corporation, to the same extent as any other litigant;
 - (2) the power of a court, independently of this Act, to compel the production of corporate records for examination.
- (f) For purposes of this section, "shareholder" includes a beneficial owner whose shares are held in a voting trust or by a nominee on his behalf.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Articles of incorporation, see § 2.02.
Board of directors' meeting, see § 8.20.
Bylaws, see § 2.06, ch. 10B.
Committees of board of directors, see § 8.25.
Corporate records required, see § 16.01.
Court-ordered inspection, see § 16.04.
"Deliver," see § 1.40.
Directors' action without meeting, see § 8.21.
Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.
"Notice" defined, see § 1.41. Notice to corporation, see § 1.41.
"Principal office":
 defined, see § 1.40.
 designated in annual report, see § 16.21.
"Shareholder" defined, see § 1.40.
Shareholders' action without meeting, see § 7.04.
Shareholders' list inspection, see § 7.20.
Shareholders' meeting, see §§ 7.01-7.03.
Voting trusts, see § 7.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 16.03. SCOPE OF INSPECTION RIGHT

- (a) A shareholder's agent or attorney has the same inspection and copying rights as the shareholder represented.
- (b) The right to copy records under section 16.02 includes, if reasonable, the right to receive copies by xerographic or other means, including copies through an electronic transmission if available and so requested by the shareholder.
- (c) The corporation may comply at its expense with a shareholder's demand to inspect the record of shareholders under section 16.02(b)(3) by providing the shareholder with a list of shareholders that was compiled no earlier than the date of the shareholder's demand.
- (d) The corporation may impose a reasonable charge, covering the costs of labor and material, for copies of any documents provided to the shareholder. The charge may not exceed the estimated cost of production, reproduction or transmission of the records.

CROSS-REFERENCES

- Corporate records, see § 16.01.
- Court-ordered inspection, see § 16.04.
- "Electronic transmission" defined, see § 1.40.
- Inspection right generally, see § 16.02.
- Shareholders' list inspection, see § 7.20.

§ 16.04. COURT-ORDERED INSPECTION

- (a) If a corporation does not allow a shareholder who complies with section 16.02(a) to inspect and copy any records required by that subsection to be available for inspection, the [name or describe court] of the county where the corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is located may summarily order inspection and copying of the records demanded at the corporation's expense upon application of the shareholder.
- (b) If a corporation does not within a reasonable time allow a shareholder to inspect and copy any other record, the shareholder who complies with sections 16.02(b) and (c) may apply to the [name or describe court] in the county where the corporation's principal office (or, if none in this state, its registered office) is located for an order to permit inspection and copying of the records demanded. The court shall dispose of an application under this subsection on an expedited basis.
- (c) If the court orders inspection and copying of the records demanded, it shall also order the corporation to pay the shareholder's costs (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred to obtain the order unless the corporation proves that it refused inspection in good faith because it had a reasonable basis for doubt about the right of the shareholder to inspect the records demanded.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(d) If the court orders inspection and copying of the records demanded, it may impose reasonable restrictions on the use or distribution of the records by the demanding shareholder.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporate records, see § 16.01.

“Principal office”:

defined, see § 1.40.

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

Registered office:

designated in annual report, see § 16.21.

required, see §§ 2.02 & 5.01.

Service on corporation, see § 5.04.

Shareholders’ list inspection, see § 7.20.

Voluntary inspection, see § 16.02.

§ 16.05. INSPECTION OF RECORDS BY DIRECTORS

(a) A director of a corporation is entitled to inspect and copy the books, records and documents of the corporation at any reasonable time to the extent reasonably related to the performance of the director’s duties as a director, including duties as a member of a committee, but not for any other purpose or in any manner that would violate any duty to the corporation.

(b) The [name or describe the court] of the county where the corporation’s principal office (or if none in this state, its registered office) is located may order inspection and copying of the books, records and documents at the corporation’s expense, upon application of a director who has been refused such inspection rights, unless the corporation establishes that the director is not entitled to such inspection rights. The court shall dispose of an application under this subsection on an expedited basis.

(c) If an order is issued, the court may include provisions protecting the corporation from undue burden or expense, and prohibiting the director from using information obtained upon exercise of the inspection rights in a manner that would violate a duty to the corporation, and may also order the corporation to reimburse the director for the director’s costs (including reasonable counsel fees) incurred in connection with the application.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Corporate records, see § 16.01.

Court-ordered inspection, see § 16.04.

Duties of board of directors, see § 8.01.

Director standards of conduct, see § 8.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 16.06. EXCEPTION TO NOTICE REQUIREMENT

(a) Whenever notice is required to be given under any provision of this Act to any shareholder, such notice shall not be required to be given if:

(i) Notice of two consecutive annual meetings, and all notices of meetings during the period between such two consecutive annual meetings, have been sent to such shareholder at such shareholder's address as shown on the records of the corporation and have been returned undeliverable; or

(ii) All, but not less than two, payments of dividends on securities during a twelve-month period, or two consecutive payments of dividends on securities during a period of more than twelve months, have been sent to such shareholder at such shareholder's address as shown on the records of the corporation and have been returned undeliverable.

(b) If any such shareholder shall deliver to the corporation a written notice setting forth such shareholder's then-current address, the requirement that notice be given to such shareholder shall be reinstated.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual meeting, see § 7.01.

Notice, see § 1.41.

Subchapter B. REPORTS

§ 16.20. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS FOR SHAREHOLDERS

(a) A corporation shall furnish its shareholders annual financial statements, which may be consolidated or combined statements of the corporation and one or more of its subsidiaries, as appropriate, that include a balance sheet as of the end of the fiscal year, an income statement for that year, and a statement of changes in shareholders' equity for the year unless that information appears elsewhere in the financial statements. If financial statements are prepared for the corporation on the basis of generally accepted accounting principles, the annual financial statements must also be prepared on that basis.

(b) If the annual financial statements are reported upon by a public accountant, his report must accompany them. If not, the statements must be accompanied by a statement of the president or the person responsible for the corporation's accounting records:

(1) stating his reasonable belief whether the statements were prepared on the basis of generally accepted accounting principles and, if not, describing the basis of preparation; and

(2) describing any respects in which the statements were not prepared on a basis of accounting consistent with the statements prepared for the preceding year.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

(c) A corporation shall mail the annual financial statements to each shareholder within 120 days after the close of each fiscal year. Thereafter, on written request from a shareholder who was not mailed the statements, the corporation shall mail him the latest financial statements.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Inspection of records, see § 16.02.

“Shareholder” defined, see § 1.40.

§ 16.21. ANNUAL REPORT FOR SECRETARY OF STATE

(a) Each domestic corporation, and each foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state, shall deliver to the secretary of state for filing an annual report that sets forth:

(1) the name of the corporation and the state or country under whose law it is incorporated;

(2) the address of its registered office and the name of its registered agent at that office in this state;

(3) the address of its principal office;

(4) the names and business addresses of its directors and principal officers;

(5) a brief description of the nature of its business;

(6) the total number of authorized shares, itemized by class and series, if any, within each class; and

(7) the total number of issued and outstanding shares, itemized by class and series, if any, within each class.

(b) Information in the annual report must be current as of the date the annual report is executed on behalf of the corporation.

(c) The first annual report must be delivered to the secretary of state between January 1 and April 1 of the year following the calendar year in which a domestic corporation was incorporated or a foreign corporation was authorized to transact business. Subsequent annual reports must be delivered to the secretary of state between January 1 and April 1 of the following calendar years.

(d) If an annual report does not contain the information required by this section, the secretary of state shall promptly notify the reporting domestic or foreign corporation in writing and return the report to it for correction. If the report is corrected to contain the information required by this section and delivered to the secretary of state within 30 days after the effective date of notice, it is deemed to be timely filed.

CROSS-REFERENCES

Annual report form prescribed by secretary of state, see § 1.21.

Authorized shares, see § 2.02.

“Deliver,” see § 1.40.

Effective date of notice, see § 1.41.

Effective time and date of filing, see § 1.23.

Filing fees, see § 1.22.

Filing requirements, see § 1.20.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

Involuntary dissolution for failure to file annual report, see § 14.20.

Issuance of shares, see §§ 6.01-6.03.

“Notice” defined, see § 1.41.

Notice to the corporation, see § 1.41. Officers, see § 8.40.

“Principal office” defined, see § 1.40.

Professional corporations, see Model Professional Corporation Supplement, Section 62.

Registered agent, see §§ 5.01 & 15.07.

Registered office, see §§ 5.01 & 15.07.

Revocation of certificate of authority for failure to file annual report, see § 15.30.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

CHAPTER 17 TRANSITION PROVISIONS

- § 17.01. Application to existing domestic corporations
- § 17.02. Application to qualified foreign corporations
- § 17.03. Saving provisions
- § 17.04. Severability
- § 17.05. Repeal
- § 17.06. Effective date

§ 17.01. APPLICATION TO EXISTING DOMESTIC CORPORATIONS

This Act applies to all domestic corporations in existence on its effective date that were incorporated under any general statute of this state providing for incorporation of corporations for profit if power to amend or repeal the statute under which the corporation was incorporated was reserved.

§ 17.02. APPLICATION TO QUALIFIED FOREIGN CORPORATIONS

A foreign corporation authorized to transact business in this state on the effective date of this Act is subject to this Act but is not required to obtain a new certificate of authority to transact business under this Act.

§ 17.03. SAVING PROVISIONS

- (a) Except as provided in subsection (b), the repeal of a statute by this Act does not affect:
 - (1) the operation of the statute or any action taken under it before its repeal;
 - (2) any ratification, right, remedy, privilege, obligation, or liability acquired, accrued, or incurred under the statute before its repeal;
 - (3) any violation of the statute, or any penalty, forfeiture, or punishment incurred because of the violation, before its repeal;
 - (4) any proceeding, reorganization, or dissolution commenced under the statute before its repeal, and the proceeding, reorganization, or dissolution may be completed in accordance with the statute as if it had not been repealed.
- (b) If a penalty or punishment imposed for violation of a statute repealed by this Act is reduced by this Act, the penalty or punishment if not already imposed shall be imposed in accordance with this Act.

These files are provided for educational and informational use only, and are not to be promulgated for any other purpose. Nothing contained herein is to be considered as the rendering of legal advice for specific cases, and readers are responsible for obtaining such advice from their own legal counsel. Any persons wishing to reprint these files in part or whole must obtain permission from the Manager, Copyrights and Licensing, American Bar Association, at 312-988-6102.

§ 17.04. SEVERABILITY

If any provision of this Act or its application to any person or circumstance is held invalid by a court of competent jurisdiction, the invalidity does not affect other provisions or applications of the Act that can be given effect without the invalid provision or application, and to this end the provisions of the Act are severable.

§ 17.05. REPEAL

The following laws and parts of laws are repealed: [to be inserted].

§ 17.06. EFFECTIVE DATE

This Act takes effect _____.

END